

SIMPLY CLEVER



Škoda Octavia Tour OWNER'S MANUAL

Introduction

You have opted for a Škoda - our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.

Your new Škoda offers you a vehicle featuring the most modern engineering and a wide range of equipment which you will undoubtedly wish to use to the full during your daily motoring. That is why, we recommend that you read this Owner's Manual attentively to enable you to become familiar with your car and all that it offers as quickly as possible.

Please do not hesitate to contact your specialist garage or importer should you have any further questions or any problems regarding your vehicle which may arise. He will be ready at any time to receive your questions, suggestions and criticisms.

National legal provisions, which deviate from the information contained in these operating instructions, take precedence over the information contained in the operating instructions.

We wish you much pleasure with your Škoda and pleasant motoring at all times.

Your Škoda Auto



On-board literature

The on-board literature for your vehicle consists of this "**Owner's Manual**" as well as the "**Quick Reference Guide**", "**Service Schedule**" and "**Help on the road**". There can also be a variety of other additional operating manuals and instructions on-board (e.g. an operating manual for the radio) depending on the vehicle model and equipment.

If one of the publications listed above is missing, please contact a specialist garage immediately, where one will be glad to assist you in such matters.

One should note that the details given in the vehicle's papers always take precedence over those in the Owner's Manual.

Owner's Manual

This Owner's Manual describes the **current scope of equipment**. Certain items of equipment listed are only installed later on and only envisaged for particular markets. The **illustrations** can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended for general information.

In addition to information regarding all the controls and equipment, the Owner's Manual also contains important information regarding care and operation for your safety and also to retain the value of your vehicle. To provide you with valuable tips and aids. You will learn how you can operate your vehicle **safely, economically** and in an **environmentally** conscious way.

For safety reasons, please also pay attention to the information on accessories, modifications and replacement of parts ⇒ page 166.

The other chapters of the Owner's Manual are also important, however, for proper treatment of your car – in addition to regular care and maintenance – helps to retain its value and in many cases is also one of the conditions for possible warranty claims.

The Service schedule

contains:

- Vehicle data;
- Service intervals;
- Overview of the service work;
- Service proof;
- Confirmation of mobility warranty;
- important information on the warranty.

The confirmations of the carried out service work are one of the conditions for possible warranty claims.

Please always present the Service schedule when you take your car to a specialist garage.

If the Service schedule is missing or worn, please contact the specialist garage where your car is serviced regularly. You will receive a duplicate, in which the previously carried out service work are confirmed.

Help on the road

contains the addresses and telephone numbers of Škoda Importers.

Contents

Layout of this Owner's Manual (explanations)

Using the system

Cockpit	
Overview	
Quick Reference Guide	
Basic functions and important information	
Instruments and warning lights	
Overview of the instrument cluster	
Engine revolutions counter	
Coolant temperature gauge	
Fuel gauge	
Speedometer	
Counter for distance driven	
Service Interval Display	
Digital clock	
Multi-functional indicator (onboard computer)*	
Information display*	
Auto Check Control	
Warning lights	
Unlocking and locking	
Key	
Changing the battery of the radio remote control	
Electronic immobiliser	
Locking	
Child safety lock	
Central locking system*	
Remote control*	
Synchronisation of the remote control	
Anti-theft alarm system*	
Power windows*	
Electric sliding/tilting roof*	

6	Lights and Visibility		
6	Lights		
6	Interior lighting		
6	Visibility		
7	7	Windshield wiper and wash system	
	7	Rear-view mirror	
9	9	Seats and Storage	
9	9	Front seats	
10	10	Adjusting front seats electrically*	
10	10	Head restraints	
16	16	Rear seats	
16	16	Pedals	
16	16	luggage compartment	
16	16	Net partition (Combi)*	
17	17	The roof rack*	
17	17	Note holder	
17	17	Ashtray*	
18	18	Cigarette lighter*, power sockets	
19	19	Storage compartments	
19	19	Heating and air conditioning system	
22	22	Air outlet vents	
23	23	Heating	
25	25	Air conditioning system*	
33	33	Climatronic* (automatic air conditioning)	
33	33	Starting-off and Driving	
34	34	Setting steering wheel position	
34	34	Ignition lock	
34	34	Starting the engine	
35	35	Switching off the engine	
35	35	Shifting	
39	39	Handbrake	
40	40	Rear parking aid*	
40	40	Cruise control system (CCS)*	
41			
44			
46	46	Communication	
46	46	Mobile phone, handsfree-system*	
50	50	Mobile phones and two-way radio systems	
51			
52	52	Safety	
54	54		
56	56	Passive Safety	
56	56	Basic information	
57	57	Correct seated position	
59	59	Seat belts	
60	60	Why seat belts?	
62	62	The physical principle of a frontal collision	
63	63	Important safety information regarding the use of seat belts	
68	68	How are seat belts correctly fastened?	
70	70	Belt tensioners	
72	72	Airbag system	
73	73	Description of the airbag system	
74	74	Front airbags	
77	77	Side airbags*	
77	77	Deactivating an airbag	
79	79	Transporting children safely	
82	82	What you should know about transporting children!	
87	87	Child seat	
87	87	Attaching a child seat using the "ISOFIX" system	
87			
88	88	Driving Tips	
89			
90	90	Intelligent Technology	
90	90	Electronic stability programme (ESP)*	
91	91	Brakes	
91	91	Brake booster	
92	92	Antilock brake system (ABS)*	
	92	Brake Assist*	
94			
94			
94			
97			
97			
98			
102			
102			
103			
103			
103			
104			
104			
107			
107			
108			
108			
109			
111			
111			
113			
113			
115			
115			
118			
121			
123			
123			
125			
126			
126			
127			
127			

Driving and the Environment	128	Breakdown assistance	167
The first 1 500 kilometres and then afterwards	128	Breakdown assistance	167
Catalytic converter	129	First-aid box*, Warning triangle* and bulb set*	167
Driving in an economical and environmentally conscious manner	129	Fire extinguisher*	167
Environmental compatibility	132	Vehicle tool kit	167
Motoring abroad	133	Spray for repairing a tyre*	168
Avoiding damage to your vehicle	133	Tyre repair kit*	168
Towing a trailer	134	Spare wheel*	168
Towing a trailer	134	Changing a wheel	169
Detachable towing device*	136	Jump-starting	173
		Tow-starting and towing vehicle	174
	137	Fuses and light bulbs	177
		Electric fuses	177
		Bulbs	180
	137		
General Maintenance	137	Technical Data	187
	137		
Fuel	142	Technical Data	187
Petrol	144	General information	187
Diesel	144	Used abbreviations	187
Refuelling	144	Performances	187
Weight	145	Identification details	187
Inspecting and replenishing	147	Fuel consumption according to the ECE standards and EU guidelines	188
Engine compartment	149	Dimensions	189
Engine oil	152	1.4 ltr./55 kW - EU4	190
Cooling system	154	1.6 ltr./75 kW - EU4/EU2 DDK	192
Brake fluid	155	1.8 ltr./110 kW - EU4/EU3D	193
Battery	159	1.9 ltr./74 kW TDI PD - EU4	196
Windshield washer system	160	Octavia - Vehicles of the group N1	198
Wheels and Tyres	160	Octavia Combi - Vehicles of the group N1	198
Wheels	166		
Accessories, changes and replacement of parts	166	Index	199
Accessories and replacement parts	166		
Technical changes	166		
Vehicles of category N1	166		

Layout of this Owner's Manual (explanations)

The Owner's Manual has been systematically designed, in order to make it easy for you to find and absorb the information you require.

Chapters, table of contents and subject index

The text of the Owner's manual is divided into relatively short sections which are combined into easy-to-read **chapters**. The chapter you are reading at any particular moment is highlighted at the bottom right of the page.

The **Table of contents** is arranged according to the chapters and the detailed **Subject index** at the end of the Owner's Manual helps you to rapidly find the information you are looking for.

Sections

The majority of **Sections** apply to all models.

Since there is a wide range of different equipment and options available it is clearly unavoidable, despite dividing the contents into sections, that mention may be made of equipment which is not fitted to your vehicle.

Brief information and instructions

Each section has a **Heading**.

This is followed by **Brief information** (in large italic lettering), which tells you the subject which is dealt with in this section.

Most of the illustrations are accompanied by an **Instruction** (in relatively large letters) which explains to you in a straightforward way the action you have to take. **Work steps** which have to be carried out are illustrated with a hyphen.

Direction indications

All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the direction of travel of the vehicle.

Explanation of symbols

* Equipment which is marked in such a way is only standard on certain vehicle model versions or only suppleable as optional equipment for certain models.

■ End of a section.

► The section is continued on the next page.

Notes

All four kinds of notes, which are used in the text, are always stated at the end of the respective section.

 **WARNING**

The most important notes are marked with the heading **WARNING**. These **WARNING** notes draw your attention to a serious risk of accident or injury. While reading the text you will frequently encounter a double arrow followed by a small warning symbol. This symbol is intended to draw your attention to a **WARNING note at the end of the section to which you must pay careful attention**.

 **Caution**

A **Caution** note draws your attention to the possibility of damage to your vehicle (e.g. damage to gearbox), or points out general risks of an accident.

 **For the sake of the environment**

An **Environmental** note draws your attention to environmental protection aspects. This is where you will, for example, find tips aimed at reducing your fuel consumption.

 **Note**

A normal **Note** draws your attention in a general way to important information. ■

Using the system

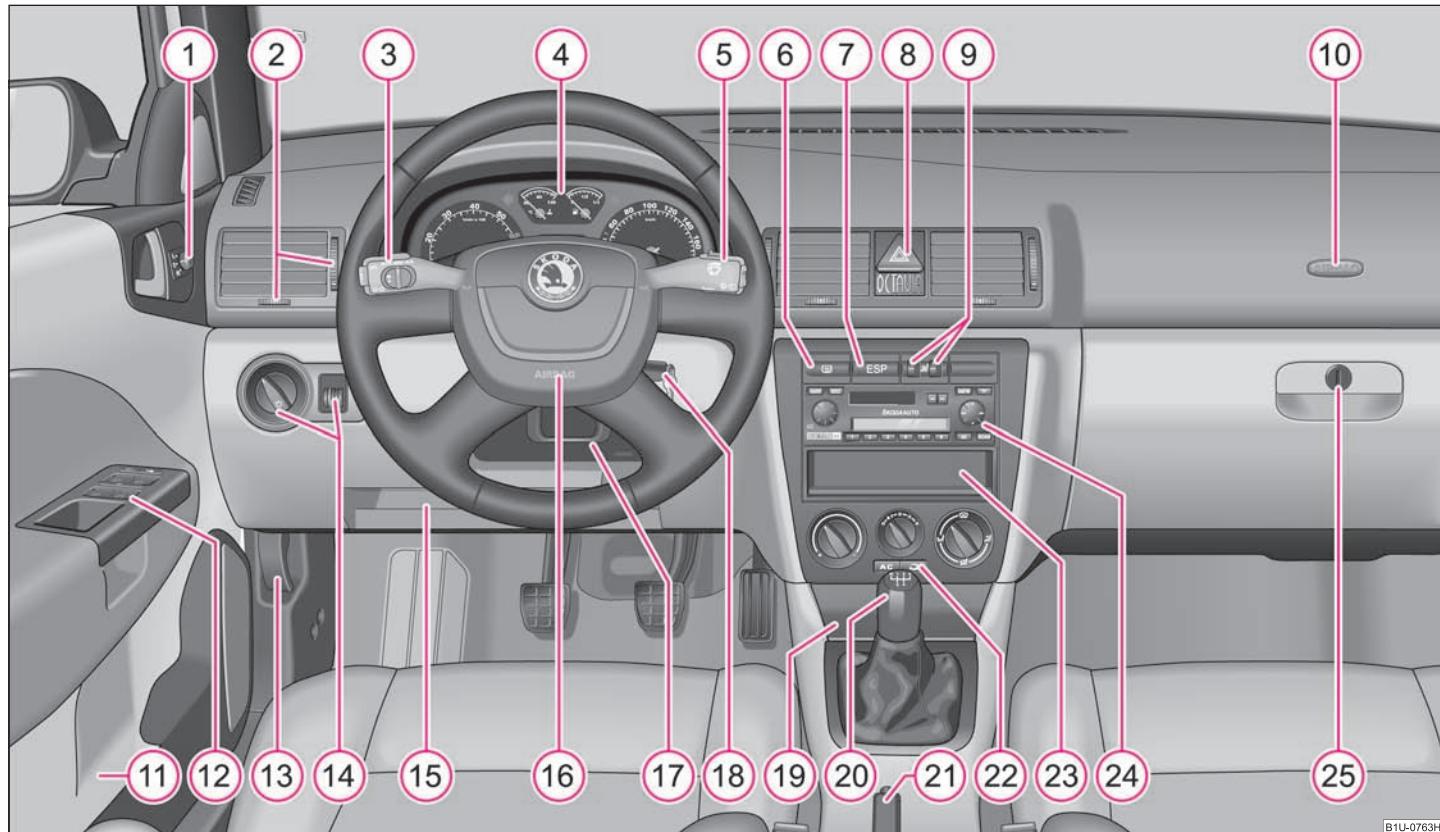


Fig. 1 Certain items of equipment shown in the illustration are only fitted to particular model versions or are optional items of equipment.

Cockpit

Overview

This overview will help you to quickly familiarise yourself with the displays and the control elements.

1 Electric exterior mirror adjustment*	54	19 Ashtrays	72
2 Air outlet vents	77	20 Gearshift lever (manual gearbox)	90
3 Lever for the multi-functional switch: – Turn signal light, headlight and parking light, headlight flasher .. – Speed regulating system*		21 Handbrake	90
4 Instrument cluster: Instruments and indicator lights	49	22 Depending on equipment fitted: – Operating controls for the heating .. – Operating controls for the air conditioning system* .. – Operating controls for Climatronic*	77
5 Lever for the multi-functional switch: – Multi-functional indicator* .. – Windshield wiper and wash system	92	23 Storage compartment in the middle part of the dash panel	79
6 Switch for rear window heater	16	24 Radio*	82
7 Depending on equipment fitted: – Switch for the ESP* .. – Switch for the TCS*	19	25 Storage compartment on the front passenger side	74
8 Switch for hazard warning lights	52		
9 Control dial for heating on the driver and front passenger seat*	123	Note	
10 Front passenger airbag*	125	● Equipment which is marked * is only standard on certain vehicle model versions or only suppliable as optional equipment for certain models.	
11 Storage compartment in the front door	48	● Vehicles with factory-fitted radio, mobile phone etc, are supplied with separate instructions for operating such equipment.	
12 Central locking switch and power windows*	62	● The arrangement of the control elements on right-hand drive models may differ to some extent from that shown in ⇒ page 8, fig. 1 . However the symbols correspond to the individual control elements. ■	
13 Bonnet release lever	109		
14 Light switch, headlamp beam adjustment	37, 41		
15 Storage compartment below steering wheel	147		
16 Steering wheel: – with horn .. – with driver airbag	46, 48		
17 Lever for adjusting the steering wheel	109		
18 Ignition lock	87		
	87		

Quick Reference Guide

Basic functions and important information

Introduction

The chapter of the brief instruction is only used as a quick reference of the most important operating elements of the vehicle. It is necessary to observe all the information which is contained in the following chapters of the Owner's Manual.

Unlocking and locking the vehicle

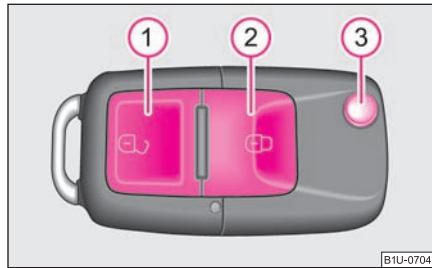


Fig. 2 Remote control key

① Unlocking the vehicle

② Locking the vehicle

③ Folding out/folding up of the key

Further information ⇒ page 39, "Unlocking and locking car". ■

Setting steering wheel position

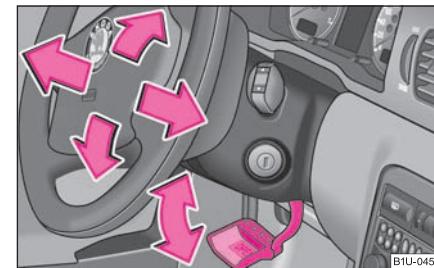


Fig. 3 Adjustable steering wheel: Lever on the steering column

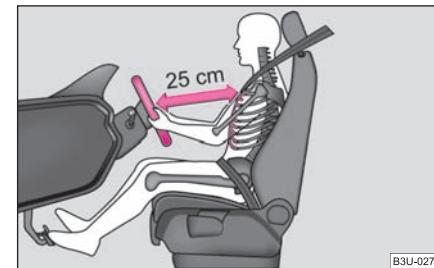


Fig. 4 The correct distance of the driver from the steering wheel

You can set the height and the forward/back position of the steering wheel to the desired position.

Further information ⇒ page 87, "Setting steering wheel position".

⚠ WARNING

- Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm ⇒ fig. 4. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- You must not adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving!
- For safety reasons the lever must always be firmly pushed up to avoid the steering wheel altering its position unintentionally when driving - risk of accident! ■

Seat belt height adjuster

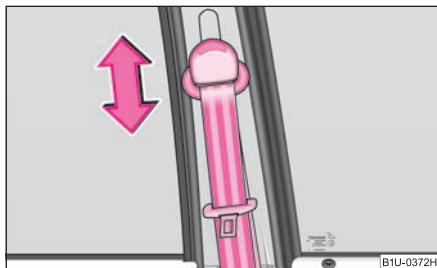


Fig. 5 Front seat: Seat belt height adjuster
B1U-0372H

- In order to adjust the height, press on the upper seat belt deflection and push it into the desired direction up or down so that the shoulder part of the belt is positioned approximately across the middle of your shoulder.
- Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

Further information ⇒ page 105, "Seat belt height adjuster".

⚠ WARNING

Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is positioned approximately across the middle of your shoulder - on no account across your neck! ■

Adjusting the front seats

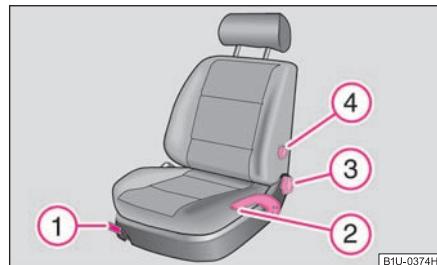


Fig. 6 Controls at seat

- ① Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction
- ② Adjusting height of seat*
- ③ Adjust the angle of the seat backrest
- ④ Adjusting lumbar support*

Further information ⇒ page 56, "Adjusting the front seats".

⚠ WARNING

Only adjust the driver seat when the vehicle is stationary - risk of injury! ■

Electric exterior mirror adjustment*

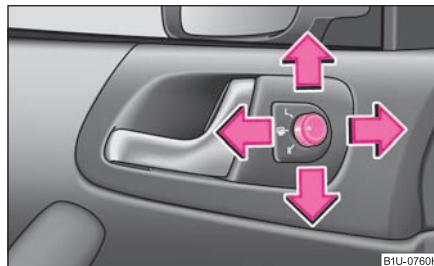


Fig. 7 Inner part of door: Rotary knob

	Heating of the external mirror
	Adjusting left and right exterior mirrors simultaneously
	Adjusting the right-hand exterior mirror
	Switching off operating control

Further information ⇒ page 54, "Exterior mirror". ■

Switching lights on and off

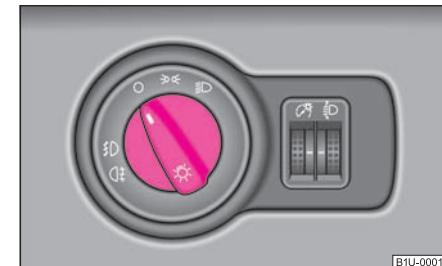


Fig. 8 Dash panel: Light switch

	Switching off all lights
	Switching on side lights
	Switching on the low beam and main beam

Further information ⇒ page 46, "Switching lights on and off". ■

Turn signal and main beam lever

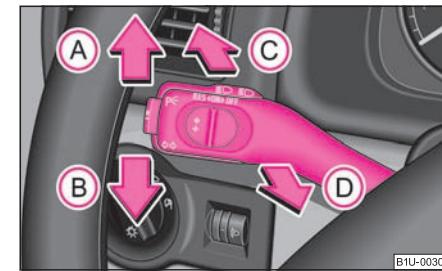


Fig. 9 Turn signal and main beam lever

- (A) Turn signal light right
- (B) Turn signal light left
- (C) Switching over between low beam and main beam lights
- (D) Headlight flasher

Further information ⇒ page 49, "The turn signal ⚠ and main beam lever ⚡". ■

Windscreen wiper lever

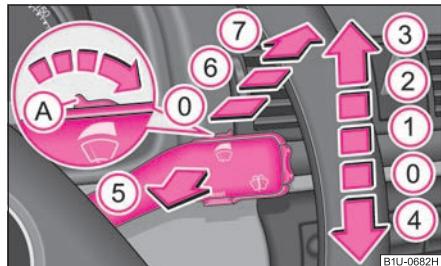


Fig. 10 Windscreen wiper lever

- (A) Intermittent switch, sensitivity setting rain sensor*
- (0) Wipers off
- (1) Intermittent wipe
- (2) Slow wipe
- (3) Fast wipe
- (4) one time wipe
- (5) Automatic wipe/wash

Rear window wiper*

- (6) Intermittent wipe - every 6 seconds
- (7) Automatic wipe/wash

Further information ⇒ page 52, "Windshield wiper". ■

Power windows*

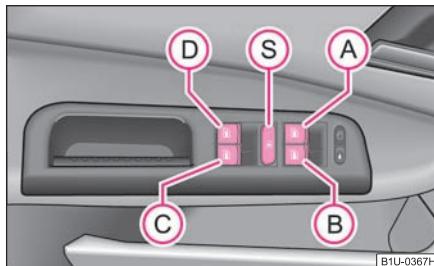


Fig. 11 Buttons on the driver's door

- (A) Button for the power window in the driver's door
- (B) Button for the power window in the front passenger's door
- (C) Button for the power window at the rear right door
- (D) Button for the power window at the rear left door
- (E) Safety switch

Further information ⇒ page 41, "Buttons on the driver's door". ■

Refuelling



Fig. 12 Right rear side of the vehicle: Fuel filler flap

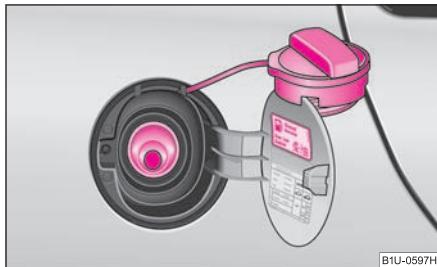


Fig. 13 Fuel filler flap with cap unscrewed
B1U-0597H

Opening the fuel filler cap

- Open the fuel filler flap with the hand.
- Unlock the fuel filler cap on the fuel filler tube to the left using the vehicle key.
- Unscrew the fuel filler cap anti-clockwise and place the fuel filler cap from above on the fuel filler flap \Rightarrow fig. 13.

Closing fuel filler cap

- Screw on the cap by turning it to the right until it is heard to lock.
- Lock the fuel filler cap on the fuel filler tube by turning the vehicle key to the right and withdraw the key.
- Press the fuel tank flap closed.

Further information \Rightarrow page 145, "Refuelling". ■

Bonnet remote release

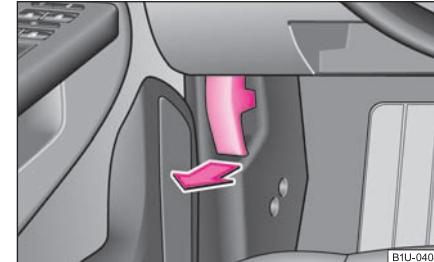


Fig. 14 Bonnet release lever
B1U-0404H

- Pull the unlocking lever below the dash panel on the driver's side \Rightarrow fig. 14.

Further information \Rightarrow page 147, "Bonnet remote release". ■

Opening the bonnet

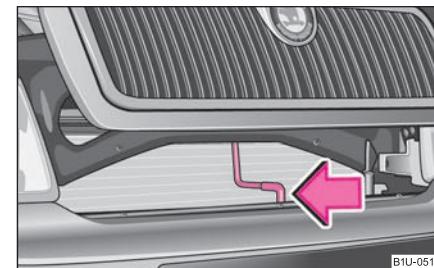


Fig. 15 Radiator grille: Locking lever
B1U-0512H

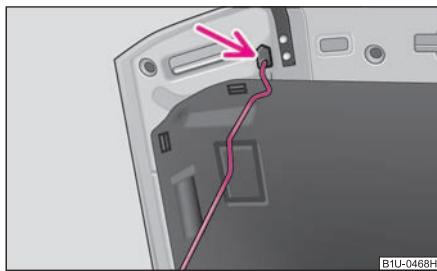


Fig. 16 Securing the bonnet with the bonnet support

(c) Engine oil **must** be refilled.

Further information ⇒ page 150, "Check engine oil level". ■

- Grip with the hand under the radiator grille and lift up the bonnet.
- Press the locking lever in direction of arrow ⇒ [page 14, fig. 15](#) and lift up the bonnet.
- Take the bonnet support out of its holder and set it in the opening designed for it
⇒ [fig. 16](#).

Further information ⇒ [page 147, "Opening and closing the bonnet."](#) ■

Inspecting the engine oil level

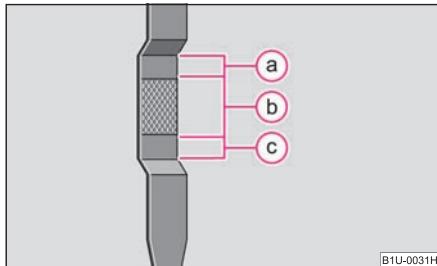


Fig. 17 Dipstick

(a) Engine oil **must not** be refilled.

(b) Engine oil **can** be refilled.

Instruments and warning lights

Overview of the instrument cluster

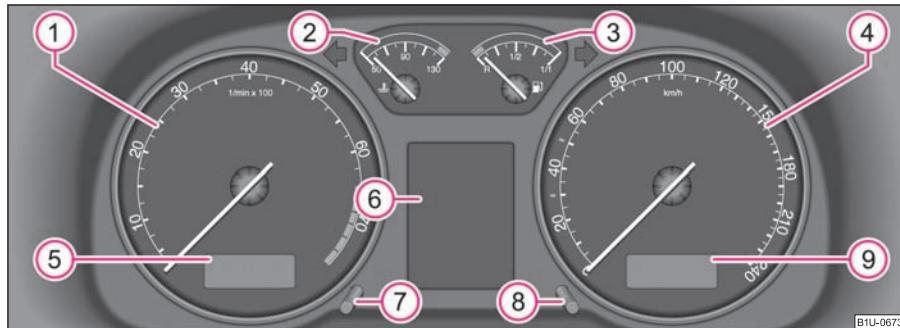


Fig. 18 Instrument cluster

- ① Engine revolutions counter ⇒ page 16
- ② Coolant temperature gauge ⇒ page 16
- ③ Fuel gauge ⇒ page 17
- ④ Speedometer ⇒ page 17
- ⑤ Digital clock, Multi-functional indicator* ⇒ page 19
- ⑥ Information display* ⇒ page 22
- ⑦ Clock-set button ⇒ page 19
- ⑧ Reset button ⇒ page 17
- ⑨ Odometer and trip counter, service interval display ⇒ page 18

When the lights are switched on, the instrument cluster is illuminated. ■

Engine revolutions counter

The start of the red zone in the revolutions counter ① ⇒ fig. 18 indicates the maximum permissible engine speed for all gears for an engine which has been run in

and operating at a normal temperature. Before reaching this zone shift up into the next higher gear.

One should shift to a lower gear at the latest when the engine is no longer running "smoothly".

Avoid high engine speeds when running-in the vehicle ⇒ page 128.



For the sake of the environment

Shifting up early helps you save fuel and reduce the operating noise of your vehicle. ■

Coolant temperature gauge

The coolant temperature gauge ② ⇒ fig. 18 operates only when the ignition is switched on.

In order to avoid any damage to the engine, please pay attention to the following notes regarding the temperature ranges:

Cold range

If the pointer is in the left-hand area of the scale it means that the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid running at high engine speeds, at full throttle and at severe engine loads.

The operating range

The engine has reached its operating temperature as soon as the pointer moves into the mid-range of the scale. The pointer may also move further to the right at high engine loads and high outside temperatures. This is not critical provided the warning symbol  in the instrument cluster does not flash.

If the symbol  in the instrument cluster flashes it means that either the coolant **temperature** is too high or the coolant **level** is too low. Observe the guidelines → page 28, "Coolant temperature/coolant level .

WARNING

Pay attention to the warning notes ⇒ page 148, "Working in the engine compartment" before opening the bonnet and inspecting the coolant level.

Caution

Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the fresh air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant. There is then a risk of the engine overheating at high outside temperatures and high engine loads! ■

Fuel gauge

The fuel gauge  ⇒ page 16, fig. 18 only operates when the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 55 litres. The warning symbol  in the instrument cluster lights up when the pointer reaches the reserve marking. There are now about 7 litres of fuel remaining in the tank. This symbol is a reminder for you, **that you must refuel**.

The following will be displayed in the information display*:

PLEASE REFUEL

A peep sounds as an additional warning signal.

Caution

Never run the fuel tank completely empty! An irregular fuel supply can result in poor ignition or misfiring. Unburnt fuel may get into the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter. ■

Speedometer

Warning against excessive speeds*

An acoustic warning signal will sound when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 kilometres per hour. The acoustic warning signal will switch off again when the vehicle speed goes below this speed limit.

Note

This function is only valid for some countries. ■

Counter for distance driven

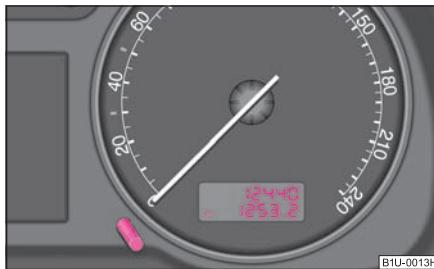


Fig. 19 Instrument cluster:
Counter for distance driven

The distance which you have driven with your vehicle is shown in kilometres (km). On certain model versions, the readout is shown in "miles". ▶

Bottom (trip) counter for distance driven

The bottom counter indicates the distance which you have driven since it was last reset - in steps of 100 m or 1/10 of a mile. The bottom counter can be reset by pressing the reset button of the trip counter ⇒ page 17, fig. 19.

Top counter for distance driven

The top counter indicates the total distance driven in kilometres or miles which the vehicle has been driven.

Fault display

dEF appears permanently in the trip counter display for distance driven if there is a fault in the instrument cluster. Have the fault rectified as soon as possible by a specialist workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Never seek to adjust the trip counter for distance driven while driving for safety reasons! ■

Service Interval Display



Fig. 20 Service Interval Display:
Note

Depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle, the text can differ slightly on the display.

Service Interval Display

If the due date for the service is reached, it is displayed¹⁾:
in the display of the trip counter:

Service 1 500 km

in the information display:

SERVICE in 1500 km

The kilometre readout decreases in steps of 100 km.

If the due date for the service is reached, the following text appears as a flashing display:

in the display of the trip counter:

Service

in the information display:

SERVICE NOW

The display disappears within 20 seconds after switching on the ignition. The trip counter is also displayed after pressing the reset button for the trip counter (for more than 0.5 second).

Resetting Service Interval Display

It is only possible to reset the Service Interval Display, if a service message or at least a pre-warning is shown on the display of the instrument cluster.

We recommend having this resetting performed by a specialist garage.

The specialist garage:

- resets the memory of the display after the appropriate inspection;
- makes an entry in the Service schedule;
- affix the sticker with the entry of the following service interval to the side of the dash panel on the driver's side.

The service interval display can also be reset with the reset button ⑧ as follows
⇒ page 16, fig. 18:

¹⁾ On some vehicles, the service interval display **service OIL** or **service INSP** is shown.

- Press the reset button with the ignition switched off and hold it down.
- Switch the ignition on, release the reset button. The text **Service** or **SERVICE NOW** appears in the display.
- Turn the button for setting the clock to the right – as a result of this the display is reset.

Caution

We recommend that you do not reset the Service Interval Display yourself otherwise this can result in the service interval display being incorrectly set, which may also result in problems with operation of your vehicle.

Note

- Never reset the display between service intervals otherwise this may result in incorrect readouts.
- Information is retained in the Service Interval Display also after the battery of the vehicle is disconnected.
- It is necessary to re-code the Service Interval Display if a new instrument cluster is installed during repair work. This work is carried out by a specialist garage.
- The data displayed is the same after resetting the display with flexible service intervals (QG1) using the reset button as that for a vehicle with fixed service intervals (QG2). We therefore recommend having the Service Interval Display reset only by a specialist garage which is familiar with the procedure for resetting the display with a vehicle system tester.
- Please refer to the brochure Service schedule for extensive information about the service intervals. ■

Digital clock

A clock-set button (7) is installed on the bottom left beside the speedometer for adjusting the clock ⇒ page 16, fig. 18.

Set hours

- Turn the reset button to the left.

Setting minutes

- Turn the reset button to the right.

WARNING

The clock should not be adjusted while driving for safety reasons but only when the vehicle is stationary! ■

Multi-functional indicator (onboard computer)*

Introduction

The multi-functional indicator appears in the display of the revolutions counter or in the information display depending on the equipment fitted to your vehicle ⇒ page 22, fig. 22.

The multi-functional indicator offers you a range of useful information.

The outside temperature	⇒ page 20
Current fuel consumption	⇒ page 21
Average fuel consumption	⇒ page 21
Range	⇒ page 21
Distance driven	⇒ page 21
Average speed	⇒ page 21
Driving time	⇒ page 21
Time	

Note

In certain national versions the displays appear in the Imperial system of measures. ■

Memory

The multi-functional indicator is equipped with two automatic memories.

The data of the single-trip memory (memory 1) is shown if a **1** appears in the display. A **2** shown in the display means that data relates to the total distance memory (memory 2).

Switching over the memory takes place with the button **(B)** ⇒ fig. 21.

Single-trip memory (memory 1)

The single-trip memory collates the driving information from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. New data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information if the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition. The memory will be automatically erased, on the other hand, if the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**.

Total-trip memory (memory 2)

The total distance driven memory gathers data from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving or 9.999 kilometres driven. The memory is deleted when either of these limits is reached and the calculation starts from anew.

The total-trip memory will not, contrary to the single-trip memory, be deleted after a period of interruption of driving 2 hours.



Note

All information in the memory is erased if the battery of the vehicle is disconnected. ■

Using the system

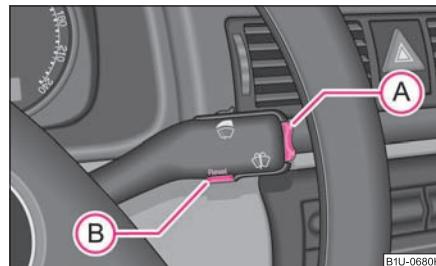


Fig. 21 Multi-functional indicator: Control elements
B1U-0680H

The rocker switch **(A)** and the button **(B)** are located on the windshield wiper lever ⇒ fig. 21.

Selecting the memory

- Repeated short-term pressing of the button **(B)** allows to select the desired memory.

Selecting the functions

- Press the rocker switch **(A)** up or down. This will cause the individual functions of the multi-functional indicator to appear in the display one after the other.

Setting function to zero

- Select the memory you want.
- Press button **(B)** for more than 1 second.

The following readouts of the selected memory will be set to zero by button **(B)**:

- average fuel consumption,
- distance driven,
- average speed,
- Driving time.

You can only operate the multi-functional indicator when the ignition is switched on. After the ignition is switched on, the function displayed is the one which you last selected before switching off the ignition.

If the outside temperature drops below +4 °C, the outside temperature indicator with a snow flake symbol appears. The symbol warns the driver of the possible danger of ice on the road. After the rocker switch **(A)** is pressed, the function displays the one which you last selected before switching off the ignition. ■

Outside temperature

The outside temperature appears in the display when the ignition is switched on.

The correct outside temperature will be indicated with a delay of 5 minutes. If the vehicle is stationary (or driven at a very low speed) the temperature indicated may be ►

slightly higher than the actual outside temperature because of heat radiated by the engine.

If the outside temperature drops below +4°C, a snow flake symbol (warning signal for ice on the road) appears behind the temperature indicator and a warning signal sounds.

WARNING

Do not only rely upon the information given on the outside temperature display that there is no ice on the road. Please note that black ice may also be present on the road surface even at temperatures around +4°C – warning, drive with care! ■

Current consumption

The current fuel consumption level is shown in the display in litres/100 km. This information can help you to adapt your style of driving to the fuel consumption you wish to achieve.

The display appears in litres/hour if the vehicle is stationary or driving at a low speed. ■

Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption since the memory was last erased is shown in the display in litres/100 km ⇒ page 19. This information can help you to adapt your style of driving to the fuel consumption you wish to achieve.

If you wish to determine the average fuel consumption over a certain period of time you must first erase the memory at the start of the new measurement using the button (B) ⇒ page 20, fig. 21. A zero appears in the display for the first 300 m you drive after erasing the memory.

The indicated value will be updated every 5 seconds while you are driving.

Note

The amount of fuel consumed will not be indicated. ■

Range

The estimated range in kilometres is shown on the display. It indicates the distance you can still drive with your vehicle based on the present level of fuel in the tank for the same style of driving. The readout is shown in steps of 10 km.

The fuel consumption for the last 50 km is taken as a basis for calculating the range. If you drive in a more economical manner from this moment on, the range will be increased accordingly.

You first drive 50 km if the readout is reset (after disconnecting the battery) before a new readout for the range is displayed. ■

Distance driven

The distance driven since the memory was last erased appears in the display ⇒ page 19. If you wish to calculate the distance driven from a particular time of day you must first erase the memory at this moment in time by pressing the button (B) ⇒ page 20, fig. 21.

The maximum distance indicated in both memories is 9 999 km. The indicator is set back to null if this period is exceeded. ■

Average speed

The average speed since the memory was last erased is shown in the display in km/hour ⇒ page 19. If you wish to determine the average speed over a certain period of time you must first erase the memory at the start of the new measurement using the button (B) ⇒ page 20, fig. 21.

A zero appears in the display for the first 300 m you drive after erasing the memory.

The indicated value will be updated every 5 seconds while you are driving. ■

Driving time

The driving time which has elapsed since the memory was last erased, appears in the display ⇒ page 19. If you wish to calculate the driving time from a particular time of day you must first erase the memory at this moment in time by pressing the button (B) ⇒ page 20, fig. 21.

The maximum distance indicated in both memories is 99 hours and 59 minutes. The indicator is set back to null if this period is exceeded. ■

Warning against excessive speeds*

An acoustic warning signal will sound when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 kilometres per hour. The acoustic warning signal will switch off again when the vehicle speed goes below this speed limit.

This function is only valid for some export countries. ■

Information display*

Introduction

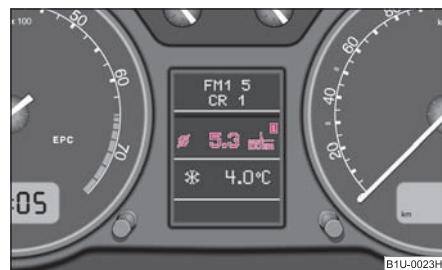


Fig. 22 Instrument cluster: large information display



Fig. 23 Instrument cluster: small information display

The information display provides you with information in a convenient way concerning the **current operating state of your vehicle**. The information system also provides you with data (depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle) relating to the radio and multi-functional indicator.

Certain functions and operating conditions are always being checked on the vehicle when the ignition is switched on and also while driving.

Functional faults, if required repair work and other information are indicated by red symbols and yellow symbols.

Lighting up of these symbols is combined with an acoustic warning signal.

Information and texts giving warnings are also shown in the display ⇒ page 25.

The display of text is possible in the following languages:

Czech, English, German, French, Italian, Spanish, Portuguese.

The desired language can be set by a specialist garage.

The following information can be shown in the display (depending on the equipment installed on the vehicle):

Menu	⇒ page 23
Door and boot lid warning	⇒ page 23
Displays of the multi-functional indicator	⇒ page 16

Warning symbols or warning lights	⇒ page 25
Displays of the Service Interval Display	⇒ page 18
Displays of the radio	

Menu



Fig. 24 Information display:
Menu

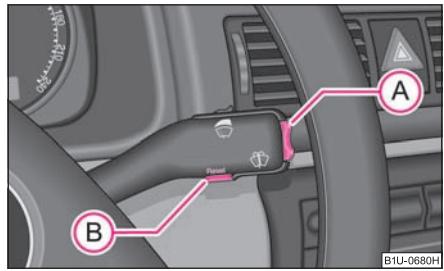


Fig. 25 Information display:
Control elements

- You can activate the menu by pressing the rocker switch (A) ⇒ fig. 25 for more than 1 second.
- You can select individual menu points by means of the rocker switch (A). The selected information is displayed after pressing the button (B) for a short time or after releasing the rocker switch (A) (after about 4 seconds).

You can select the following information (depending on the equipment installed on the vehicle):

■ TRIP COMPUTER (AUTO COMPUTER)	⇒ page 19
CAR STATUS	⇒ page 23
DISPLAY OFF	

After selecting the menu point **DISPLAY OFF** the display is switched off. Press the rocker switch (A) for more than 1 second to switch the display on again.

The Information **CAR STATUS** flashes in the menu if there is something which is not in proper order on the vehicle (e.g. warning of a low fuel level). The first warning will be displayed after switching over to **CAR STATUS**. You can then display other operating conditions afterwards using the switch-over function (such as water level low). ■

Door and boot lid warning

The door and boot lid warning lights up if at least one door or the boot lid is not closed. The symbol displays the respective **opened** door and boot lid.

The symbol goes out as soon as the doors and the boot lid are completely closed.

As an additional warning signal, a 3 time peep sounds if the car is driven at a speed of more than 6km/hour and if the door is open. ■

Auto Check Control

Car state

The Auto Check Control carries out a check of certain functions and vehicle components. The check is performed constantly when the ignition is switched on, both when the vehicle is stationary, as well as when driving.

Operational faults, urgent repairs, service work or other information appear in the display of the instrument cluster. The displays are shown with a red or yellow light symbol depending on the priority of the message.

The red symbols indicate **danger** (priority 1) while the yellow symbols indicate a **warning** (priority 2). Information for the driver may also appear in addition to the symbols ⇒ page 25.

Investigate the displayed faults as soon as possible. If several operational faults exist at the same time, the symbols will appear one after the other and are each visible for about 2 seconds.

The error messages are faded out after 10 seconds or by actuating the rocker switch  ⇒ page 23, fig. 25 and are stored under the information **CAR STATUS**.

There is at least one error message to be read when the term **CAR STATUS** is flashing in the menu. In the display **STATUS 1/2** lights up, for example, if a number of error messages are present. This display indicates that the first of a total of two error messages should be displayed.

Actuate the rocker switch , to call up the individual error messages.

If a fault occurs, a warning signal will also sound in addition to the symbol and text in the display:

- Priority 1 - three warning signals
- Priority 2 - one warning signal ■

Red symbols

A red symbol signals danger.

Proceed as follows if a red symbol is displayed:

- Stop the vehicle.
- Switch the engine off.
- Check the functions indicated.
- Obtain professional assistance.

Meaning of the red symbols:

	Faults in the brake surface	⇒ page 31
	Coolant level too low/coolant temperature too high	⇒ page 28
	Engine oil pressure too low	⇒ page 29

Three successive warning signals will sound if a red symbol appears. The symbol continues flashing until the fault is rectified.

If several operational faults of priority 1 exist, the symbols appear one after the other and are each illuminated for about 2 seconds. ■

Yellow symbols

A yellow symbol signals a warning.

The meaning of the yellow symbols:

	Fuel level low	⇒ page 29
	Check engine oil level, engine oil sensor faulty	⇒ page 29
	Brake pad worn	⇒ page 29
	Washer fluid level low	⇒ page 29
	faulty bulb	⇒ page 27

One warning signal will sound if a yellow symbol appears.

If several operational faults of priority 2 exist, the symbols appear one after the other and are each illuminated for about 2 seconds.

Check the relevant function as soon as possible. ■

Warning lights

Overview

The warning lights indicate certain functions or faults.



Fig. 26 Instrument cluster with warning lights

◀	Turn signal lights (to the left)	⇒ page 26	▶	Electronic immobiliser	⇒ page 27
▶	Turn signal lights (to the right)	⇒ page 26	▶	Bulbs*	⇒ page 27
◀▶	Turn signal system for vehicles towing a trailer*	⇒ page 26	▶	Control system for exhaust	⇒ page 27
☰	Main beam light	⇒ page 26	▶	EPC fault light* (petrol engine)	⇒ page 27
☰	Low beam light	⇒ page 26	▶	Glow plug system (diesel engine)	⇒ page 27
☰	Fog lights*	⇒ page 27	▶	Airbag system*	⇒ page 28
☰	Rear fog light	⇒ page 27	▶	Coolant temperature/coolant level	⇒ page 28

	Brake pad wear*	⇒ page 29
	Fuel reserve	⇒ page 29
	Engine oil	⇒ page 29
	Open door*	⇒ page 30
	Fluid level in windshield washer system*	⇒ page 29
	Antilock brake system (ABS)*	⇒ page 30
	Traction control system (TCS)*	⇒ page 31
	Electronic stability programme (ESP)*	⇒ page 31
	Dynamo	⇒ page 31
	Brake system	⇒ page 31
	Seat belt warning light*	⇒ page 32

**Note**

- Arrangement of the indicator lights depends on the model and model version. The symbols shown in the following functional description are to be found as indicator lights in the instrument cluster.
- Operational faults are shown in the instrument cluster as red symbols (priority 1 - danger) or yellow symbols (priority 2 - warning). ■

Turn signal system

Either the left or right indicator light flashes depending on the position of the turn signal lever.

The indicator light flashes at twice its normal rate if a turn signal light fails. This does not apply when towing a trailer.

Switching off the hazard warning light system is switched on will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both indicator lights to flash.

Further information about the turn signal system ⇒ page 49. ■

Turn signal system for vehicles towing a trailer

The warning light flashes together with the other turn signal lights only if the vehicle is towing a trailer.

The indicator light does not flash if a turn signal light on the trailer or on the vehicle is not operating. ■

Main beam

The indicator light comes on when the main beam is selected or also when the headlight flasher is operated.

Further information about the main beam ⇒ page 49. ■

Low beam

The warning light comes on when low beam is selected ⇒ page 46. ■

WARNING

- If you do not pay attention to the warning lights coming on and the corresponding descriptions and warning notes, this may result in severe body injuries or major vehicle damage.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. There is a risk of injuries, scalding, accidents and fire when working in the engine compartment, e.g. inspecting and replenishing oil and other fluids. It is also essential to observe all warnings ⇒ page 148.

Fog lights

The warning light  comes on when the fog lights are operating. ■

Rear fog light

The warning light  comes on when the rear fog lights are operating ⇒ page 47. ■

Electronic immobiliser

Data is compared between the ignition key and the control unit when switching on the ignition. The indicator light  will light up for a few seconds when ignition key authorisation is confirmed.

The warning light will start flashing continuously if a non-authorised ignition key (for example the wrong ignition key) has been used. The engine cannot be started ⇒ page 34.

It is only possible to start the engine of the vehicle with a Genuine Škoda key with the matching code.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

IMMOBIL. ACTIVATED ■

Bulbs

The warning light  comes on if a bulb is faulty:

- Brakes applied (brake light);
- Switching on the lights (front low beam or rear parking lights).

A peep sounds as an additional warning signal. ■

Control system for exhaust

The warning light  comes on after the ignition has been switched on.

If the warning light does not go out after starting the engine or it lights up or flashes when driving, a fault exists in an exhaust relevant component. The engine manage-

ment system selects an emergency programme which enables you to drive to the nearest specialist garage by adopting a gentle style of driving.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

EMISSIONS WORKSHOP! ■

EPC fault light EPC (petrol engine)

The **EPC** (Electronic Power Control) warning light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

If the warning light **EPC** does not go out or lights up after starting the engine, a fault exists in the engine control. The engine management system selects an emergency programme which enables you to drive to the nearest specialist garage by adopting a gentle style of driving.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

ENGINE WORKSHOP! ■

Glow plug system (diesel engine)

The warning light  lights up for a **cold** engine when switching on the ignition (pre-heat position) 2 ⇒ page 87. Start the engine just as soon as the indicator light goes out.

The glow plug indicator light will come on for about 1 second if the engine is at a **normal operating temperature** or if the outside temperature is above +5°C. This means that you can start the engine **right away**.

There is a fault in the glow plug system if the **warning light  does not come on at all or lights up continuously**. Contact a specialist garage as soon as possible to obtain assistance.

If the **warning light  begins to flash** while driving, a fault exists in the engine control. The engine management system selects an emergency programme which enables you to drive to the nearest specialist garage by adopting a gentle style of driving.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

ENGINE WORKSHOP! ■

Airbag system

Monitoring the airbag system

The warning light  comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

There is a fault in the system if the warning light does not go out or comes on or flashes while driving \Rightarrow . This also applies if the warning light does not come on when the ignition is switched on.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

AIRBAG FAULT

The functionality of the airbag system is also monitored electronically when one airbag has been switched off.

Front airbag or side passenger airbag deactivated using the diagnostic equipment:

- The warning light  lights up for 3 seconds after switching on the ignition and then flashes again for 12 seconds.

The following situation applies if the airbag has been switched off using the switch for the airbag* in the storage compartment:

- The warning light  comes on for 3 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.
- The deactivation of the airbag is indicated by the lighting up of the indicator light **AIRBAG OFF** in the interior lighting \Rightarrow page 113.

WARNING

Have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage if a fault exists. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.

Note

Further information about switching off airbags \Rightarrow page 113. ■

Coolant temperature/coolant level

The warning light  comes on for a few seconds ²⁾ when the ignition is switched on.

The coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level too low if the warning light  does not go out or flashes while driving.

3 beeps sound as an additional warning signal.

In this case stop and switch the engine off and check the coolant level; top up the coolant as necessary.

Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible under the conditions prevailing to top up with coolant. **Keep the engine switched off** and obtain professional assistance from a specialist garage, otherwise it could lead to severe engine damage.

If the coolant is within the specified range, the increased temperature may be caused by an operating problem at the coolant fan. Check the fuse for the coolant fan, replace it if necessary \Rightarrow page 178, "Fuse assignment in engine compartment - version 1" or \Rightarrow page 179, "Fuse assignment in engine compartment - version 2".

Do not continue driving if the warning light does not go off although the fluid is at the correct level and also the fuse of the fan is in proper order. Contact a specialist garage to obtain assistance.

Please refer to the following guidelines \Rightarrow page 152, "Cooling system".

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

STOP CHECK COOLANT SERVICE MANUAL

WARNING

- If you must stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic and switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning light system \Rightarrow page 48.
- Take care when opening the coolant expansion bottle. If the engine is hot, the cooling system is pressurized - risk of scalding! It is best to allow the engine to cool down before removing the cap.

²⁾ The warning light  on vehicles fitted with information display does not come on after switching the ignition on, but only if the coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level is too low.

WARNING (continued)

- **Do not touch the coolant fan** The coolant fan may switch on automatically even if the ignition is off. ■

Thickness of the brake pads*

The warning light  comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

If the warning light  comes on, contact a specialist garage immediately and have the brake pads on **all of the wheels** inspected.

A peep sounds as an additional warning signal.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

CHECK BRAKE PADS ■

Windshield washer fluid level*

The warning light  comes on when the ignition is switched on if there is insufficient fluid in the windshield washer system. Top up with liquid ⇒ page 159.

A peep sounds as an additional warning signal.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

TOP UP WASH FLUID ■

Fuel reserve

The warning light  comes on, if the fuel level is still below 7 litres.

A peep sounds as an additional warning signal.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

PLEASE REFUEL

Note

The Text in the information display* goes out only after refuelling and driving a short distance. ■

Engine oil

The warning light lights up red (low oil pressure)

The warning light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on³⁾.

Stop the vehicle and switch the engine off if the warning light does not go off within a few seconds after switching on the ignition or flashes while driving. Check the oil level and top up with oil as necessary ⇒ page 151.

3 beeps sound as an additional warning signal.

Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible under the conditions prevailing to top up with oil. **Keep the engine switched off** and obtain professional assistance from a specialist garage, otherwise it could lead to severe engine damage.

Do not drive any further if the warning light remains on even if the oil is at the correct level. Do not run the engine not at idling speed either. Contact the nearest specialist garage to obtain professional assistance.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

STOP! OIL PRESS. STOP MOTOR! SERVICE MANUAL

The warning light lights up yellow* (oil quantity too low)

If the warning light lights up yellow, there is not the correct quantity of oil in the engine. Check as soon as possible the oil level or top up ⇒ page 151 with engine oil.

A peep sounds as an additional warning signal.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

CHECK OIL LEVEL

When opening the bonnet, the warning light goes out. If no engine oil has been replenished, the warning light will come on again after driving about 100 km.

The warning light flashes yellow* (engine oil level sensor faulty)

A fault on the engine oil level sensor is indicated additionally by an audible signal and the warning light coming on several times after the ignition has been switched on.

³⁾ The warning light  on vehicles fitted with information display does not come on after switching the ignition on, but only if a fault exists or the engine oil level is too low.

In this case have the engine inspected without delay by a specialist garage.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

OIL SENSOR WORKSHOP!

WARNING

- If you must stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic and switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning light system ⇒ page 48.
- The red oil pressure light  is not an oil level indicator! One should therefore check the oil level at regular intervals, preferably after every refueling stop. ■

Open door*

The warning light  comes on, if one or several doors are opened.

The warning light on vehicles fitted with information display comes on when switching the ignition off. If a door or the boot lid is opened.

The warning light on vehicles fitted with information display goes out after switching the ignition off. ■

Antilock brake system (ABS)*

The warning light  shows the functionality of the ABS and the Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)*.

The warning light comes on for a few seconds after the ignition has been switched on or when starting the engine. The warning light goes out after an automatic check sequence has been completed.

A fault in the ABS

The system is not functioning properly if the ABS warning light  does not go out within a few seconds after switching on the ignition, does not light up at all or lights up while driving. The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system. Visit a specialist garage as quickly as possible and adjust your style of driving to take account

of the fault in the meantime since you will not know the extent of the fault and in how far the effect of the antilock brakes is affected.

Further information about ABS ⇒ page 126, "Antilock brake system (ABS)*".

A fault in the entire brake system

If the ABS warning light  comes on together with the brake system warning light  (handbrake must be released), there is a fault not only in the ABS but also in another part of the brake system ⇒ .

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)*

The EDL is a part of the ABS. A fault in the EDL is indicated by the lighting up of the ABS warning light  in the instrument cluster. Have the vehicle inspected immediately by your nearest specialist garage.

Models fitted with ESP are equipped with electronic differential lock (EDL).

If a significant fault occurs in the ABS system, a warning signal sounds additionally (3 beeps).

Further information on the EDL ⇒ page 124.

WARNING

- If the brake system warning light  comes on together with the ABS warning light  stop the vehicle immediately and check the brake fluid level in the reservoir ⇒ page 154, "Brake fluid". If the fluid level has dropped below the MIN marking, do not drive any further – risk of accident! Obtain professional assistance.
- Pay attention to the following instructions before checking the brake fluid level and opening the bonnet ⇒ page 148, "Working in the engine compartment".
- If the brake fluid is at the correct level, the ABS control function has failed. The rear wheels may then block very rapidly when braking. In certain circumstances, this can result in the rear end of the car breaking away – risk of skidding! Drive carefully to the nearest specialist garage and have the fault rectified. ■

Traction control system (TCS)*

The warning light  comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

The warning light flashes when a control cycle is activated while driving.

The warning light will come on and remains on if the TCS is switched off or if there is a fault in the system.

The fact that the TCS system operates together with the ABS means that the TCS warning light will also come on if the ABS system is not operating properly.

If the warning light  comes on immediately after starting the engine, the TCS system can be switched off for technical reasons. In this case, the TCS system can be switched on again by switching the ignition on and off. If the warning light goes out, the TCS system is fully functional again.

Further information about the TCS ⇒ page 125, "Traction control system (TCS)". ■

Electronic stability programme (ESP)*

The warning light  comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

Components of the ESP system also include the Traction Control System (TCS), the Electronic Differential Lock (EDL) and the Antilock Brake System (ABS).

The warning light flashes when a control cycle is activated while driving.

The warning light will come on and remains on if the ESP is switched off or if there is a fault in the system.

The fact that the ESP system operates together with the ABS and the EDL means that the ESP warning light will also come on if the ABS system is not operating properly.

If the warning light  comes on immediately after starting the engine, the ESP system can be switched off for technical reasons. In this case, the ESP system can be switched on again by switching the ignition on and off. If the warning light goes out, the ESP system is fully functional again.

Further information on the ESP ⇒ page 123, "Electronic stability programme (ESP)*".



Note

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light  comes on after switching on the ignition. The warning light must go out after driving a short distance. ■

Alternator

The warning light  comes on after the ignition has been switched on. It should go out after the engine has started.

If the warning light does not go out after the engine has started, or comes on when driving, drive to the nearest specialist garage. The vehicle battery will be discharged in this case so switch off all non-essential electrical components.

A peep sounds as an additional warning signal.



Caution

If the warning light  comes on when driving and in addition the warning light  (cooling system fault) also comes on in display, you must then stop the car immediately and switch the engine off - risk of engine damage! ■

Brake system

The warning light  comes on for several seconds after the ignition is switched on.

If the warning light  stays on when the ignition is switched on or comes on while driving, there is a fault in the brake system. Visit the nearest specialist garage immediately and have the brake system inspected.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

STOP BRAKE FLUID SERVICE MANUAL

3 beeps sound as an additional warning signal.

One should get used to high pedal forces, long braking distances and long free play of the brake pedal when driving to the next specialist garage.

For further information on the brake system ⇒ page 125, "Brakes". ▶

Handbrake applied

The warning light  also comes on if the handbrake is applied. An audible warning is also given if you drive the vehicle for at least 3 seconds at a speed of more than 5 km/h.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

HANDBRAKE ON**⚠ WARNING**

- Pay attention to the following instructions before checking the brake fluid level and opening the bonnet ⇒ page 148, "Working in the engine compartment".
- If the brake system warning light  does not go out a few seconds after switching on the ignition or comes on when driving, stop immediately and check the brake fluid in the reservoir ⇒ page 154, "Brake fluid". If the fluid level has dropped below the MIN marking, do not drive any further – risk of accident! Obtain professional assistance. ■

Seat belt warning light* 

The warning light  comes on after the ignition is switched on as a reminder to fasten the seat belt.

In the event that the driver is not restrained, a warning signal sounds for 6 seconds.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

FASTEN SEAT BELT

Further information on the seat belts ⇒ page 102, "Seat belts". ■

Unlocking and locking

Key

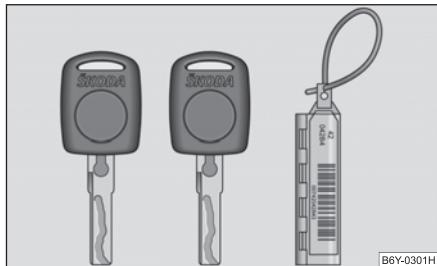


Fig. 27 Set of keys without remote control

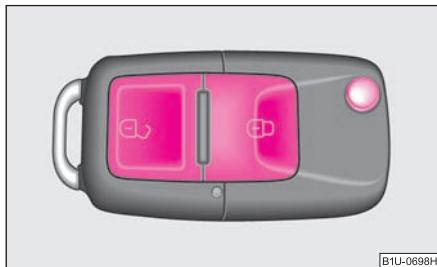


Fig. 28 Remote control key

Two keys are provided with the vehicle. Depending on the equipment, your vehicle can be equipped with keys without radio remote control ⇒ fig. 27 or with radio remote control* ⇒ fig. 28.

Key ring

A plastic tag ⇒ fig. 27 is attached to one of the keys with the identification of the key. This identification can be used to order replacement keys from specialist garages.

Carefully **store** the **key ring** on which there is the number, because a replacement key can only be ordered with this number in case the key is lost or damaged. You should also therefore hand over this key ring to the purchaser when selling the vehicle.

WARNING

- Always withdraw the key whenever you leave the vehicle – even if it is only for a short time. This is particularly important if children are left in the vehicle. The children might otherwise start the engine or operate electrical equipment (e.g. power windows) – risk of injury!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop. The steering lock might otherwise engage unintentionally – risk of accident!

Caution

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore protect them against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the groove of the keys absolutely clean as impurities (textile fibres, dust etc.) have a negative effect on the proper operation of the locking cylinder and the ignition lock.

Note

Please approach a specialist garage if you lose a key since he can obtain a new one for you. ■

Changing the battery of the radio remote control

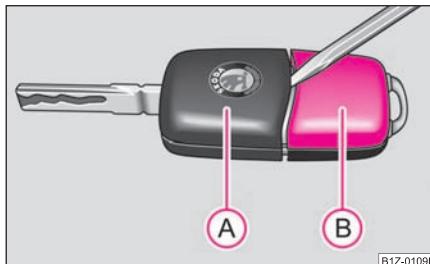


Fig. 29 Disconnect key with radio remote control

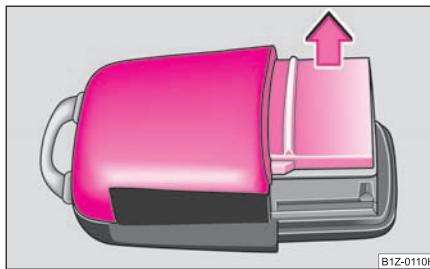


Fig. 30 Cover of the transmitter housing

Each remote control key contains a battery which is housed in the cover **B** ⇒ fig. 29 of the transmitter housing. We recommend having the battery of the key replaced by a specialist garage. You should, however, proceed as follows if you wish to replace the battery yourself:

- Fold open the key.
- Use a thin screwdriver to carefully lever off the front part of the key **A** ⇒ fig. 29 from the transmitter housing **B**.
- Take off the cover of the transmitter housing ⇒ fig. 30 in direction of arrow.
- Take the used battery out of the housing cover.

- Insert the new battery. Ensure that the "+" symbol on the battery is facing downwards. The correct polarity is also shown on the cover of the transmitter housing.
- Insert cover with battery in place at the rear of the transmitter housing and press both parts together.
- Insert the transmitter housing into the front part of the key so that the two parts lock into each other.

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of a used battery in accordance with environmental regulations.

Note

- The replacement battery must have the same specification as the original battery.
- If it is still not be possible to unlock or lock the vehicle with the remote control even after replacing the battery this means that the system has to be synchronised
⇒ page 40. ■

Electronic immobiliser

The electronic immobiliser prevents the vehicle being operated by an unauthorised person.

An electronic chip is integrated in the head of the key. The immobiliser is deactivated with the aid of this chip when the key is inserted in the ignition lock. The electronic immobiliser is automatically activated when you withdraw the ignition key from the lock.

Note

It is only possible to start the engine of your car with a Genuine Škoda key with the matching code ⇒ page 27. ■

Locking

Valid for vehicles without a central locking system:



Locking from outside

The securing knob will move upwards or downwards in the door when **unlocking** or **locking**.

Locking from inside

All closed vehicle doors are locked by pressing in the securing knobs from the inside. The doors cannot be opened from the outside when the securing knobs have been pressed in. The vehicle doors can be opened from the inside as follows:

- the door is unlocked by actuating the door-opening lever;
- The door opens upon actuating the door-opening lever again.

Note

- The opened door cannot be locked with the securing knob. This prevents the possibility of forgetting the key in the locked vehicle.
- The opened side doors at the rear and the front passenger door are locked by pressing in the securing knob and slamming the door closed.
- Please refer to the safety guidelines ⇒ page 35. ■

Child safety lock

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside.

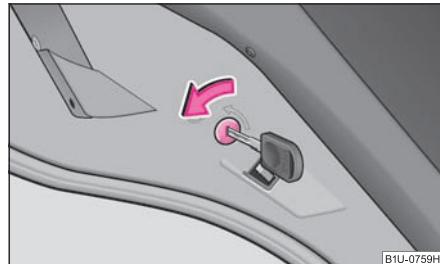


Fig. 31 Child safety locks on the rear doors
B1U-0759H

The rear doors are equipped with a child safety lock. You can switch the child safety lock on and off using the vehicle key.

Switching child safety lock on

- Use the vehicle key to turn the slit in the rear door to the left in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 31.

Switching child safety lock off

- Use the vehicle key to turn the slit to the right against the direction of the arrow.

So long as the child safety lock is switched on it is not possible to open the door from the inside with the door opening lever. In this case the door can be opened only from the outside. ■

Central locking system*

Description

Unlocking or locking the vehicle causes **all** doors to be unlocked or locked at the same time by the central locking system. The boot lid is unlocked when opening. It can be opened by pressing the hand grip above the licence plate ⇒ page 38, fig. 34.

Operation of the central locking system is possible:

- from the outside using the vehicle key ⇒ page 37,
- using the button for the central locking system ⇒ page 37,
- by using the remote control ⇒ page 39.
- with the securing knobs in the doors ⇒ page 37, fig. 33 - only for vehicles which are not fitted with electrically operated power windows (only for locking).

Warning light and securing knobs in the doors

All the securing knobs move upwards when **unlocking**.

The driver door must be closed when **locking**. Other doors can also be closed after locking.

All the securing knobs move downwards when **locking**. If this is not the case, the relevant door must be opened once again and properly closed.

The **warning light** flashes in the driver door, next to the securing knob, to confirm that the vehicle has been correctly locked. The warning light will not flash if the safe securing system is deactivated ⇒ page 36.

This is not the case, however, for vehicles with an anti-theft alarm system* since the indicator light is showing that the system is active.

Convenience operation of the windows

One can open and close the electrically powered windows when unlocking and locking the vehicle ⇒ page 43, "Window convenience operation".

Opening a single door*

This function makes it possible to only unlock the driver's door. The other doors remain locked and are only unlocked when the command is repeated.

If you wish, you can have a specialist garage activate the function of the single door opening mode.



WARNING

Locking the doors prevents involuntary opening in an exceptional situation (an accident). Locked doors prevent unwanted entry into the vehicle from outside, for example at road crossings. Locked doors do, however, make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency - danger to life!



Note

- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.
- Only the front doors can be unlocked and locked using the key if the central locking system fails. You can lock or unlock manually the other doors and the boot lid.
- Emergency locking of the door ⇒ page 38.
- After locking the vehicle via the central locking system, optically check if all the doors have been locked - position of the securing knobs. ■

Safe securing

The central locking system is equipped with a **safe securing** system. Locking the vehicle from the outside causes the door locks to be automatically blocked. It is not possible to open the doors with the door handle either from the inside or from the outside. This acts as an effective deterrent for attempts to break into your vehicle.

If you lock the vehicle with a key or a remote control key, you can deactivate the safe securing system by locking two times within 2 seconds.

The warning light in the driver door will not flash if the safe securing system is deactivated.

This is not the case, however, for vehicles with an anti-theft alarm system* since the indicator light is showing that the system is active.

The safe securing system is again activated the next time the vehicle is unlocked and locked again.

The doors can be opened from the inside if the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system is deactivated:

- the door is unlocked by actuating the door-opening lever;
- The door opens upon actuating the door-opening lever again.

WARNING

If the vehicle is locked from the outside and the safe securing system is activated, there must not be any person and animals in the vehicle as it is then not possible to open either a door or a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency - hazard!

Note

The anti-theft alarm system* is also activated with the deactivated safe securing system when locking the vehicle. The interior monitor* is however not activated. ■

Unlocking the vehicle using the key

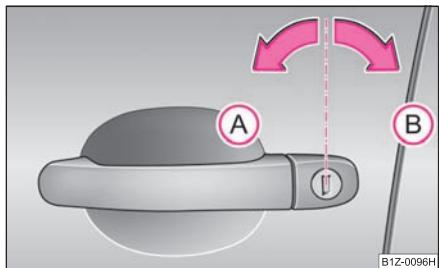


Fig. 32 Turning the key for unlocking and locking the vehicle

- Turn the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door to the left in the unlock position **A** ⇒ fig. 32.
- Pull on the door handle and open the door.
- All the doors are unlocked.
- The boot lid is then unlocked.
- The switched on interior lights come on over the door contact.
- The safe securing system is deactivated.
- The windows open provided the key is held* in the unlock position. On vehicles fitted with anti-theft alarm system the window operation is only possible 45 seconds after deactivation of the warning system.
- The indicator light in the driver's door stops flashing if the vehicle is not fitted with an anti-theft alarm system* ⇒ page 40.

Note

If the vehicle is equipped with an anti-theft alarm system*, you must insert the key into the ignition lock and switch the ignition on within 15 seconds after unlocking the door in order to deactivate the anti-theft alarm system. The **alarm will be triggered** if you do **not switch on** the ignition within 15 seconds. ■

Locking the vehicle with the key

- Turn the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door to the right in the lock position **B** ⇒ fig. 32.
- All the doors and the boot lid are locked.
- The switched on interior lights will switch off over the door contact.
- The windows and the electric sliding/tilting roof* close provided the key is held in the lock position.
- The safe securing system is activated immediately.
- The indicator light in the driver door begins flashing.

Note

The opened driver door cannot be locked. It must be locked separately after closing it. ■

Button for the central locking system



Fig. 33 Button for the central locking system

If the vehicle is not locked from outside, you can unlock and lock the vehicle with the button in the driver door.

Locking all doors and the boot lid

- Press button **①** ⇒ fig. 33. The symbol in the button comes on.

Unlocking all doors and the boot lid

- Press button ② ⇒ page 37, fig. 33. The symbol ➊ goes out in the button.

The following applies if you have locked your vehicle using the button ①:

- It is not possible to open the doors or the boot lid from the outside (safety feature, e.g. when stopping at traffic lights etc.).
- You can unlock the doors individually from the inside and open them by pulling the door opening lever.
- If the driver door is opened, it cannot be locked; in order to avoid inadvertently locking the vehicle. You then have to lock the door separately after closing them.
- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked from the inside in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

WARNING

The central locking system also operates if the ignition is switched off. All the doors and the boot lid are locked. Children should never be left unattended in the vehicle since it is difficult to provide assistance from the outside when the doors are locked. Locked doors make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency - hazard!

Note

The door opening lever and the buttons for the central locking system do not operate if the safe securing system is activated. ■

Emergency locking of the doors

Use the securing knobs in the doors for an emergency locking of the doors ⇒ page 37, fig. 33.

After closing the door, you can no longer open it from outside. If the child safety lock is not switched on, it is possible to open the door from the inside by pulling twice on the door opening lever. If the child safety lock is switched on, it is necessary to also open the door from outside besides pulling twice on the inner door handle. ■

Boot lid

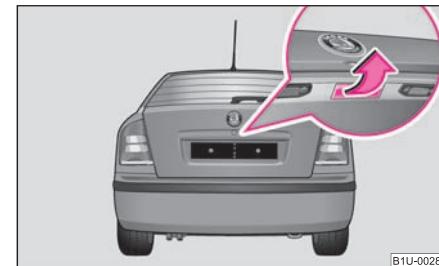


Fig. 34 Handle of boot lid

Open the boot lid by pressing the hand grip above the licence plate after unlocking the vehicle using the key or the radio remote control. On vehicles with central locking*, the boot lid is automatically unlocked and locked with the other locks.

Opening the boot lid

- Press on the handle ⇒ fig. 34 and at the same time raise the boot lid.

Closing the boot lid

- Pull the boot lid down and close it with a slight swing ⇒ .

A handle which makes the closing easier is located on the inner paneling of the boot lid.

WARNING

- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the boot lid. Otherwise, the boot lid might open suddenly when driving even if the boot lid lock is closed - risk of accident!
- Never drive with the boot lid fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle - risk of poisoning!
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the boot lid, it could crack - risk of injury! ■

Remote control*

Description

The vehicle can be unlocked and locked using the radio remote control.

The transmitter with the battery is incorporated in the handle of the master key. The receiver is located in the interior of the car. The operating range of the remote control key is approx. 10 m. But this range can be reduced if the batteries are weak.

The master key has a fold-open key bit which can be used for unlocking and locking the car manually and also for starting the engine.

If a lost key is replaced or if the receiver unit has been repaired or a new unit installed, it is then necessary for a specialist garage to adapt the system. Only after this is it possible to again use the remote control.

i Note

- The remote control is automatically deactivated when the ignition is switched on.
- The operation of the remote control may temporarily be affected by interference from transmitters close to the car and which operate in the same frequency range (e.g. mobile phone, TV transmitter).
- The battery must be replaced, ideally by a specialist garage, if the central locking or anti-theft alarm system does react to the remote control at less than 3 metres away. ■

Unlocking and locking car

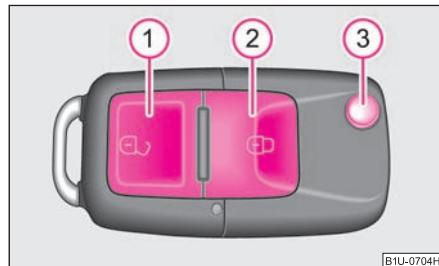


Fig. 35 Folding key with radio remote control
B1U-0704H

Unlocking the vehicle

- Press button **①** for about 1 second.

Locking the vehicle

- Press button **②** for about 1 second.

Deactivating safe securing system

- Press button **③** twice in 2 seconds. Further information ⇒ page 36.

Folding out of the key

- Press button **③**.

Folding up of the key

- Press button **③** and collapse the key bit in the housing.

The turn signal lights flash twice as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked. The vehicle will lock again automatically if you unlock the vehicle using button **①** but do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 30 seconds. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

The safe securing system along with the anti-theft alarm system are, however, deactivated during these 30 seconds.

In addition, when the car is unlocked, the electrically adjustable seats and exterior mirrors* move into the position assigned to this key. The stored setting of driver seat and exterior mirrors is retrieved.

The turn signal lights flash once to confirm that the vehicle has been correctly locked. If the turn signal lights do not flash, check the doors, bonnet and boot lid again to ensure that they are closed. If the doors, the bonnet or the boot lid remain open when the anti-theft alarm system is activated, the turn signal lights do not flash until after they have been closed.

When the vehicle is unlocked or locked, the interior lights in the door contact are automatically switched on or off.

WARNING

If the vehicle is locked from the outside and the safe securing system is activated, there must not be any person in the vehicle as it is then not possible to open either a door or a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – hazard!

Note

- Operate the radio remote control only when the doors and boot lid are closed and you have visual contact with the vehicle.
- Once in the car, you must not press the lock button  of the radio remote control before inserting the key into the ignition lock in order to avoid the car being inadvertently locked and the alarm system* being switched on. Should this happen, press the unlock button  of the radio remote control. ■

Synchronisation of the remote control

If the vehicle cannot be unlocked by actuating the remote control system then it is possible that the code in the key and the control unit in the vehicle are no longer synchronised. This can occur when the buttons on the radio-operated key are actuated a number of times outside of the operative range of the equipment or the battery on the remote control was replaced.

This means it is necessary to synchronise the code as follows:

- Press any button on the remote control.
- pressing of the button means that the door will unlock with the key within 1 minute. ■

Anti-theft alarm system*

Description

The anti-theft alarm system increases the level of protection against people seeking to break into the vehicle. The system triggers audible and visual warning signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle.

Optical and acoustic signals alert if an alarm has been triggered (the turn signal lights flash and the signal horn honks).

How is the alarm system activated?

The anti-theft alarm system is activated automatically when the vehicle is locked with the key on the driver's door or by using the radio remote control. It is activated 30 seconds after locking the door.

How is the alarm system deactivated?

The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated if the vehicle is unlocked by only using the radio remote control. The anti-theft alarm system is reactivated if the vehicle is not opened within 30 seconds after transmitting the radio signal.

Once you unlock the vehicle by inserting the key into the driver door you then have to insert the key into the ignition lock and switch the ignition on within 15 seconds after unlocking the door in order to deactivate the anti-theft alarm system. The **alarm will be triggered** if you do **not switch on** the ignition within 15 seconds.

When is the alarm triggered?

The following security areas of the locked vehicle are monitored:

- Bonnet,
- Boot lid,
- Doors,
- Ignition lock,
- Vehicle interior⁴⁾,
- A drop in voltage of the on-board power supply.

An alarm is immediately triggered if either of the two battery terminals is disconnected while the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

Deactivation of interior monitor

The process of switching off and switching on the interior monitoring system is the same as for switching off and switching on the safe securing system ⇒ page 36.

⁴⁾ The alarm will be triggered through movement of occupants within the interior of the vehicle or an attempt to steal the radio. The rear part of the interior of the vehicle is not fully monitored under certain circumstances.

This function makes it possible for example to leave animals in the vehicle.

How is the alarm switched off?

You switch the alarm off if you unlock the vehicle with the radio remote control or if you switch the ignition on.



Note

- The working life of the alarm siren is 5 years. More detailed information is available by a specialist garage.
- Before leaving the car, check that all the doors, windows and the electric sliding/tilting roof* are properly closed in order to ensure that the anti-theft alarm system is fully operational.
- Coding of the radio remote control and the receiver unit precludes the use of the radio remote control from other vehicles. ■

Power windows*

Buttons on the driver's door

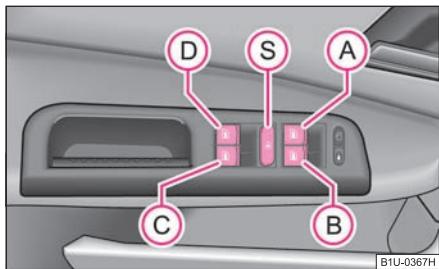


Fig. 36 Buttons on the driver's door

The power windows operate only when ignition is switched on. After switching the ignition off, the power windows can still be operated however for maximum 10 minutes if a front door is not opened.

Opening a window

- A window is opened by pressing lightly on the respective button in the door. The process stops when one releases the button.
- Additionally you can open the window automatically (fully opened) by pressing the button up to the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Closing a window

- A window is closed through pulling lightly on the respective button in the door. The closing process stops when one releases the button.
- Additionally you can close the window automatically (fully closed) by pulling the button up to the stop. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

The buttons for the individual windows are located in the armrest of the driver's door ⇒ fig. 36, front passenger door and in the rear doors*.

Buttons for the power windows in the armrest for the driver

- (A) Button for the power window in the driver's door
- (B) Button for the power window in the front passenger's door
- (C) Button for the power window in the rear door on the right*
- (D) Button for the power window in the rear door on the left*
- (S) Safety pushbutton*

Safety pushbutton*

You can deactivate the buttons for power windows at rear doors by pressing the safety pushbutton (S) ⇒ fig. 36. The buttons for power windows at rear doors are activated again by pressing the safety pushbutton (S) again.

If the buttons for the rear doors are deactivated, the indicator light in the safety switch (S) lights up.

WARNING

- If you lock the vehicle from the outside, do not leave any person in the vehicle since it is no longer possible to open the windows from the inside in an emergency.
- The system is fitted with a force limiter ⇒ page 42. If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down into the opened position. You should then take particular care when closing the windows! You may otherwise suffer severe injuries as a result of getting an arm, for example, jammed in the window!
- It is recommended to deactivate the electrically operated power windows in the rear doors (safety pushbutton)  ⇒ page 41, fig. 36 when children are being transported on the rear seats.

Note

- Other switches have only two positions for opening and closing the window. The switch must be held until the window is opened or closed.
- After switching the ignition off, it is still possible to open or close the windows for a further 10 minutes. The automatic window closing will not operate during this time. The power windows are switched off completely once you open the driver or front passenger door.
- When driving always use the existing heating, air conditioning and ventilation system for ventilating the interior of the vehicle. If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds. ■

Button in the front passenger door and in the rear doors

A button for the relevant window is provided in these doors.

Opening a window

- Lightly press the appropriate button **down** and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

Closing a window

- Lightly press the appropriate button **up** and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

WARNING

The system is fitted with a force limiter ⇒ page 42. If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down. You should then take particular care when closing the windows! You may otherwise suffer severe injuries as a result of getting an arm, for example, jammed in the window!

Note

After switching the ignition off, it is still possible to open or close the windows for a further 10 minutes. The automatic closing and opening functions will not operate during this time. The power windows are switched off completely once you open the driver or front passenger door. ■

Force limiter of the power windows

The electrically operated power windows are fitted with a force limiter. It reduces the risk of bruises or injuries when closing the windows.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down into the opened position.

You must try to close the window once again within 10 seconds after the window has gone down and if the obstacle was not yet removed, the closing process is stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window.

The force limiter is only switched off, if you attempt to close the window within the next 10 seconds - **the window closes now with full strength!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

WARNING

You should take particular care when closing the windows! You may otherwise suffer severe injuries as a result of getting an arm, for example, jammed in the window! ■

Window convenience operation

You can open and close the electrically powered windows as follows when unlocking and locking the vehicle (only close the sliding/tilting roof):

Opening a window

- Hold the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the unlock position until all the windows are opened.

Closing a window

- Hold the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the lock position until all the windows are closed.

You can interrupt the opening or closing operation of the windows immediately by releasing the key.

WARNING

- There must not be any persons in the vehicle which is locked from the outside. After approx. 10 minutes have expired or after opening and closing the vehicle door when the ignition is switched off, the windows can no longer be opened.
- The person who operates the convenience system must take extra care, when closing the window, that no passengers suffer any injuries.

Note

Obstruction protection is not active during the convenience operating feature. ■

Operational faults

Electrically operated power windows do not operate

If the battery of the car has been disconnected and then reconnected, the electrically operated power windows do not operate. The system must be activated. Proceed as follows in order to re-establish the function:

- Hold the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the lock position until all the windows are closed,
- Release the key,
- Hold the key again in the locking position for about 3 seconds.

Operation in winter

Ice accumulating on the surface of the windows during the winter may result in a greater resistance when closing the windows and the window may stop and go down several centimetres

Proceed as follows to close the window fully:

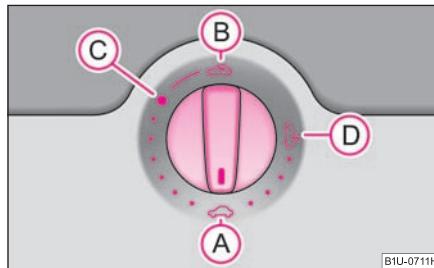
- Hold the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the lock position until all the windows are closed,
- Repeat this operative cycle when the window stops.

WARNING

The system is fitted with a force limiter ⇒ page 42. If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimeters. You should then take particular care when closing the windows! You may otherwise suffer severe injuries as a result of getting an arm, for example, jammed in the window! ■

Electric sliding/tilting roof*

Description



BIU-0711H

Fig. 37 Control dial for the power sliding/tilting roof

The sliding/tilting roof is operated by means of the control dial \Rightarrow fig. 37 and only functions when the ignition is switched on. The control dial has several positions.

After switching the ignition off, it is still possible to open, close and tilt the sliding/tilting roof for approx. 10 minutes. It is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof after opening one of the front doors, however.



Note

- If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sliding/tilting roof does not close fully. Here you have to set the control dial to the switch position **(A)** and press it forward for about 10 seconds.
- It is necessary after each emergency operation (using crank handle) to move the sliding/tilting roof into the basic position. Here you have to set the control dial to the switch position **(A)** and press it forward for about 10 seconds. ■

Opening and tilting

Comfort position

- Turn the switch to position **(C)** \Rightarrow fig. 37.

Opening fully

- Turn the switch to position **(B)** and hold it in this position (spring-tensioned position).

Tilting roof

- Turn the switch to position **(D)**.

When the sliding/tilting roof is in the comfort position, the intensity of the wind noise is much less.

The sun screen is also opened automatically when the roof slides open. You can slide the sun screen into the opened or closed position by hand when the sliding/tilting roof is closed.

Caution

It may be necessary during winter to remove any ice and snow in the area of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it in order to prevent damaging the opening mechanism. ■

Closing

Sliding closed/closing the sliding/tilting roof

- Turn the switch to position **(A)** \Rightarrow fig. 37.

Safety closing

The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter. If an obstacle (e.g. ice) prevents closing, the sliding/tilting roof stops and opens completely. You can close the sliding/tilting roof completely without force limiter by pressing the switch to the **(A)** position \Rightarrow fig. 37 at the front for as long as it takes for the sliding/tilting roof to close completely \Rightarrow !.



WARNING

Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully - risk of injury! ■

Convenience operation

You can also close an open sliding/tilting roof from the outside.

- Hold the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the lock position until the sliding/tilting roof is closed ⇒ .

The closing process stops when one releases the key.

WARNING

Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully – risk of injury! The force limiter does not operate with the convenience closing.

Emergency operation

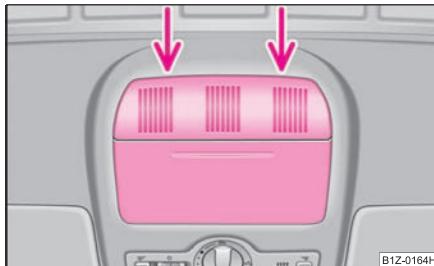


Fig. 38 Detail of the headliner:
point for positioning screwdriver

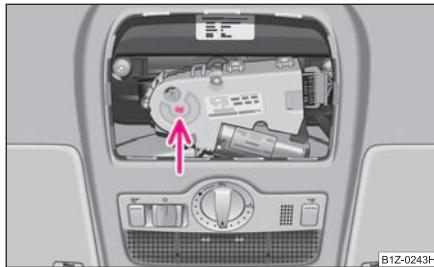


Fig. 39 Detail of the headliner:
Emergency operation

You can close and/or open the sliding/tilting roof by hand if the system is defect.

- Position the flat blade of a screwdriver carefully against the rear edge of the cover of the electrical drive.
- Pull the cover down ⇒ fig. 38.
- Insert an Allen key, Group 4, up to the stop into the opening and close and/or open the sliding/tilting roof.
- Press on the cover again by first of all inserting the plastic lugs and then pushing the cover up.
- Have the malfunction rectified by a specialist garage.

Note

It is necessary after each emergency operation (using Allen key) to move the sliding/tilting roof into the basic position. Here you have to turn the control dial forward to the switch position  ⇒ page 44, fig. 37 and press for about 10 seconds. ■

Lights and Visibility

Lights

Switching lights on and off

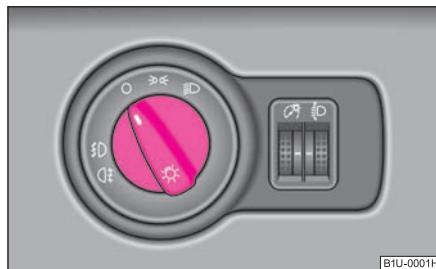


Fig. 40 Dash panel: Light switch

Switching on side lights

- Turn the light switch into position .

Switching on the low beam and main beam

- Turn the light switch into position .
- Press the main beam lever forward in order to switch on the main beam
[⇒ page 49, fig. 45.](#)

Switching off all lights

- Turn the light switch into position .

Switching on daylight driving lights*

- Remove the cover of the fuse box on the left side of the dash panel ⇒ page 177.
- Insert the activation fuse No. 17 in the fuse box.

Switching off daylight driving lights*

- Remove the cover of the fuse box on the left side of the dash panel ⇒ page 177.
- Take the activation fuse No. 17 out of the fuse box.

Low beam comes on only if the ignition is switched on. After switching off the ignition, the low beam is switched off automatically and only the side lights come on.

On models fitted with **right-hand steering** the position of certain switches differs from that shown in ⇒ [fig. 40](#). The symbols which mark the switch positions are identical.

In certain countries, the low beam is on a reduced brightness as well as the side lights, when the ignition is switched on.



WARNING

Never drive with side lights on – risk of accident! The side lights are not bright enough to light up the road sufficiently in front of you or to be seen by other oncoming traffic. In this case, always switch on the low beam when it is dark or if visibility is poor.



Note

- An audible warning will sound if you withdraw the ignition key and open the driver's door when the vehicle lights are still on.
- The acoustic warning signal is switched off over the door contact when the driver's door is closed (ignition off). The vehicle can be parked with the side lights on.
- If the car is parked for a lengthy period, we recommend switching off all lights, or leaving only the parking lights switched on.
- The switching on of the described lights should only be undertaken in accordance with the legal requirements.
- If a fault occurs in the light switch, the low beam comes on automatically.
- In the event of cool or humid weather conditions, the headlights can be misted up from inside.

- The temperature difference between interior and external area of the headlight lenses is decisive.
- When the driving lights are switched on, the light outlet surfaces are free from mist after a short period. The headlight lenses can possibly mist up at the border areas.
- It also concerns reverse light and turn signal lights.
- This mist has no influence on the life of the lighting system. ■

Fog lights*

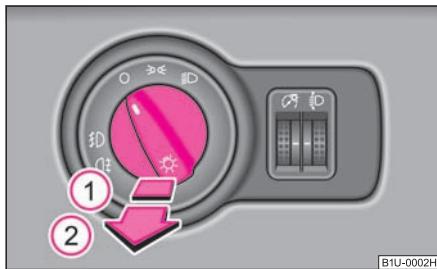


Fig. 41 Dash panel: Light switch

Switching on the fog lights

- First of all turn the light switch into position  or  ⇒ fig. 41.
- Pull the light switch into position ①.

If the fog lights are switched on, the symbol  next to the light switch is more brightly illuminated as well as the warning light in the instrument cluster ⇒ page 27. ■

Rear fog light

Switching on the rear fog light

- First of all turn the light switch into position  or  ⇒ fig. 41.
- Pull the switch into position ②.

If the vehicle is not fitted with fog lights*, the rear fog light is switched on by turning the light switch to the position  and is pulled out directly to the position ②. This switch does not have two positions, but only one position.

The warning light  lights up in the instrument cluster when the rear fog light is switched on ⇒ page 25.

Only the rear fog light of the trailer lights up automatically when you are towing a trailer **using a factory-fitted towing device** which is fitted with the rear fog light.

The rear fog light is located in the rear light array on the driver's side.

Caution

The rear fog light should only be switched on if visibility is particularly poor (conform with any varying legal provisions) to avoid dazzling vehicles behind your vehicle. ■

Instrument lighting*

You can adjust the brightness of the instrument lighting.

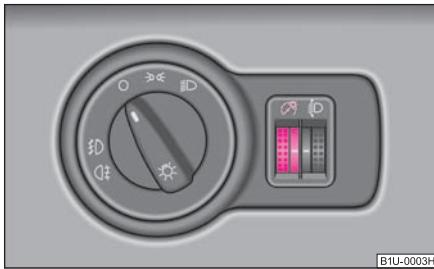


Fig. 42 Dash panel: Instrument lighting

Instrument lighting

- Switch on the light.
- Turn the control dial ⇒ fig. 42 to the desired intensity of the instrument lighting. ■

Headlamp range adjustment

Once the low beam is switched on you can then adapt the range of the headlights to the load of the vehicle.

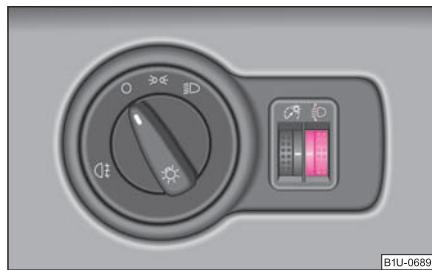


Fig. 43 Dash panel: Lights and Visibility
B1U-0689H

- Turn the control dial  fig. 43 until you have adjusted the low beam so that oncoming traffic is not dazzled.

Settings

The positions correspond approximately to the following vehicle loads:

-  I Front seats occupied, luggage compartment empty.
-  II All seats occupied, luggage compartment empty.
-  III All seats occupied, luggage compartment laden.
-  Driver seat occupied, luggage compartment laden.

Caution

Set the headlight beam adjustment in such a way as to avoid dazzling oncoming traffic.

Note

Headlights fitted with Xenon bulbs adapt automatically to the load and driving state of the vehicle (e.g. accelerating, braking) when the ignition is switched on and when driving. ■

Switch for hazard warning lights



Fig. 44 Dash panel: Switch for hazard warning lights
B1U-0765H

- Press switch  fig. 44 to switch the hazard warning light system on or off.

All the turn signal lights on the vehicle flash at the same time when the hazard warning light system is switched on. The indicator light for the turn signals and the indicator light in the switch also flash at the same time. You can also switch on the hazard warning light system if the ignition is switched off.

The hazard warning light system is switched on automatically if an airbag is deployed in the event of an accident.

Please comply with any legal requirements when using the hazard warning light system.

Note

Switch on the hazard warning light system if, for example:

- you encounter traffic congestion,
- your vehicle breaks down or an emergency situation occurs. ■

The turn signal and main beam lever

The parking lights and headlight flasher are also switched on and off using the turn signal and main beam lever.



Fig. 45 Turn signal and main beam lever

B1U-0647H

The turn signal and main beam lever perform the following functions:

Right and left turn signal light

- Push the lever upwards or downwards  fig. 45.
- Turn signal for changing lanes - in order to only flash briefly, move the lever up or down to the pressure point and hold it in this position.

Main beam

- Switch on the low beam.
- Push the lever forwards.
- Pull the lever back into the initial position in order to switch the main beam off again.

Headlight flasher

- Pull the lever towards the steering wheel (spring-tensioned position) - the main beam and warning light in the instrument cluster come on.

Parking light

- Switch off the ignition.
- Push the lever up or down - the right-hand or left-hand parking light is switched on.

Information concerning the function of the lights.

- The **turn signal system** only operates when the ignition is switched on. The corresponding warning light  or  in the instrument cluster also flashes.
- The turn signal is automatically cancelled after negotiating a curve.
- The indicator light flashes at twice its normal rate if a bulb of the turn signal light fails.
- The side light and rear light on the appropriate side of the vehicle are switched on when the **parking light** is selected. The parking light function only operates if the ignition is switched off.
- An acoustic warning signal will sound when the driver's door is opened if the lever is not in the middle position after removing the ignition key. The acoustic warning signal will stop just as soon as the driver's door is closed.

Caution

Use main beam or the headlight flasher only if this does not risk dazzling other road users.

Note

Use only in accordance with the legal requirements the described lighting and signal systems. ■

Coming Home Function*

This function makes it possible to switch on low beam for a short time after leaving the car, e.g. to illuminate the path to your front door, etc.

Selecting function

- Switch off the light.

- Switch off the ignition.
- Operate the headlight flasher once.
- Open and close the driver door.

If the door remains open, the light remains on for about 3 minutes.

If the door remains closed, the light stays on for about 30 seconds. ■

Interior lighting

Front interior lighting and lighting of storage compartment on front passenger side

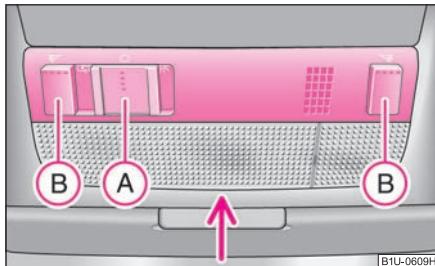


Fig. 46 Detail of the headliner: front interior lighting

B1U-0609H

Switching the interior light on

- Press the switch **A** to the left, the symbol ⇒ fig. 46 appears.

Switching the interior light off

- Press the switch **A** into the middle position **O**.
- On the version without reading lights press the switch **A** to the right, the symbol **O** appears.

Door contact switching mechanism (front and rear* doors)

- Press the switch **A** to the right, the symbol appears.

- On the version without reading lights press the switch **A** into the middle position .

Reading lights*

- Press on one of the switches **B** in order to switch the right or left reading light on or off.

Lighting of storage compartment on the front passenger side*

- When opening the flap of the storage compartment on the front passenger side the lighting in the storage compartment comes on.
- The light switches on automatically when the parking light is switched on and goes out when the flap is closed.

On vehicles with central locking, the interior light is switched on for about 20 seconds when the vehicle is unlocked, when a door is opened or after withdrawing the ignition key (if the switch of the relevant interior light is in the door contact position).

The interior lighting goes off after about 60 minutes when a door has been left open in order to avoid discharging the battery of the vehicle.



Note

We recommend having these bulbs replaced by a specialist garage. ■

Rear interior lighting*

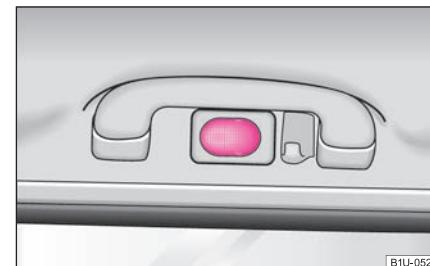


Fig. 47 Rear light



The rear interior lighting ⇒ page 50, fig. 47 is switched on and off by pressing the glass on the indented point.

The same principles apply for the interior lighting at the rear as for the interior lighting at the front ⇒ page 50.

Note

We recommend having the bulb replaced by a specialist garage. ■

Luggage compartment light*

The light is located at the left top side of the (right - Combi) luggage compartment.

The lighting comes on automatically when the boot lid is opened. If the lid remains open for more than about 30 minutes, the luggage compartment lighting switches off automatically. ■

Visibility

Rear window heater



Fig. 48 Switch for rear window heater

- You can switch the rear window heater on or off by pressing the switch  ⇒ fig. 48
- the indicator light in the switch comes on or goes out.

You can only activate the rear window heater when the ignition is switched on.

On vehicles with electrically operated power windows, the exterior mirror heater is also switched on at the same time when the rear window heater is activated.



For the sake of the environment

As soon as the window is de-iced or free from mist, the heating should be switched off. The reduced current consumption will have a favourable effect on fuel economy ⇒ page 132, "Saving electricity". ■

Sun visors

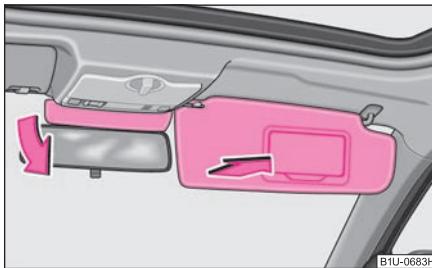


Fig. 49 Sun visor: swivelling out

The sun visors can be pulled out of the fixtures and swiveled towards the side window. The visor above the interior mirror* can only be folded down. ⇒ fig. 49.

Sun visors with lighting*

After folding down the visor, the lighting for the vanity mirror is switched on. ■

Windshield wiper and wash system

Windshield wiper

You can operate the windscreens wipers and automatic wipe/wash using the windscreen wiper lever.

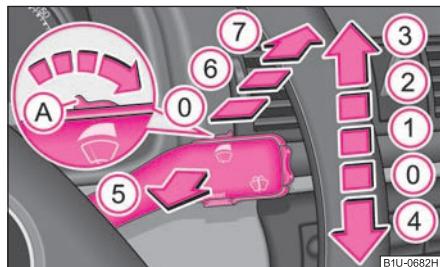


Fig. 50 Windscreen wiper lever

The windscreen wiper lever \Rightarrow fig. 50 has the following positions:

Finger-operated wiping

- If you wish to wipe the windscreen only **briefly**, push the lever into the sprung position ④.

Intermittent wiping

- Position the lever up into position ①.
- Set with the switch ⑤ the desired break between the individual wiper strokes

Slow wipe

- Position the lever up into position ②.

Fast wipe

- Position the lever up into position ③.

Automatic wipe/wash for windscreens

- Pull the lever towards the steering wheel into the spring-tensioned position ⑤, the windscreens wiper and wash system will operate immediately.
- Release the lever. The windscreens wash system stops and the wiper continues for another 1 - 3 wiper strokes (depending on the period of spraying of the windscreens).

Rain sensor*

- Move the lever into position ①.
- You can set the sensitivity of the sensor individually with switch ⑤.
- After switching off the ignition, you must then once again activate the sensor by moving the lever into position ①, and then back into position ②.

Wiping the rear window pane*

- Push the lever away from the steering wheel into position ⑥ - the wide-screen wiper will operate every 6 seconds.

Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window pane*

- Push the lever away from the steering wheel into the spring-tensioned position ⑦, the windscreens wiper and wash system will operate. As long as you hold the lever in this position, the wiper and the wash system operate - spring-tensioned position.
- Letting go of the lever will cause the windscreens wash system to stop and the wiper to continue for another 1 - 3 wiper strokes (depending on the period of spraying of the windscreens). **The lever will stay in position after releasing it ⑥.**

Switching windscreens wipers off

- Move the lever back into its home position ①.

The windscreens wipers and the windscreens washer system only operate if the ignition is switched on.

The rain sensor* automatically regulates the break between the individual wiper strokes depending on the intensity of the rain.

The windscreens washer nozzles for the windscreens are heated* when the ignition is switched on.

Top up with wash liquid ⇒ page 159.

WARNING

- Properly maintained windscreens wiper blades are essential for clear visibility and safe driving ⇒ page 53, "Replacing wiper blades for the windscreens wipers".
- Do not use the windscreens washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreens beforehand. Otherwise the window cleaner could freeze on the windscreens and restrict the view to the front.
- The rain sensor only operates as a support. The driver is not released from the responsibility to set the function of the windscreens wipers manually depending on the visibility conditions.

Caution

In frosty weather, please first of all check whether the windscreens wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreens before switching them on. Switching on windscreens wipers when the blades are frozen to the windscreens may result in damage both to the blades and the motor of the windscreens wipers! ■

Replacing wiper blades for the windscreens wipers

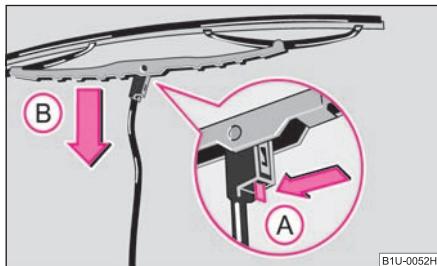


Fig. 51 Wiper blade for the windscreens wiper
B1U-0052H

Taking off the wiper blade

- Fold windscreens wiper arm out from the windscreens and position the wiper blade at right angles to the wiper arm ⇒ .
- Press the securing spring in the direction of arrow **A** and press the wiper blade at the same time to the windscreens **B** - Warning, danger of breaking the windscreens. ⇒ fig. 51 ⇒ .

Attaching a wiper blade

- Clip the securing spring until it is heard to lock in the windscreens wiper arm.
- Check whether the wiper blade is correctly attached.

Wiper blades in proper condition are essential to obtain good visibility. Wiper blades should not be allowed to become dirtied by dust, insect remains and preserving wax. Juddering or smearing of the wiper blades could then be due to wax residues left on the windscreens by vehicle washing in automatic vehicle wash systems. It is therefore important to **degrease** the lips of the wiper blades after every pass through an **automatic vehicle wash system**.

WARNING

- If the windscreens wipers are handled carelessly, there is a risk of damage to the windscreens.
- You should clean the wiper blades regularly with a windscreens cleaner in order to avoid any smears. Clean a wiper blade with a sponge or cloth if it is very dirty, for example from insect residues.
- Replace the wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. The wiper blades are available from specialist garages. ■

Replacing the wiper blade for rear window (Octavia)*

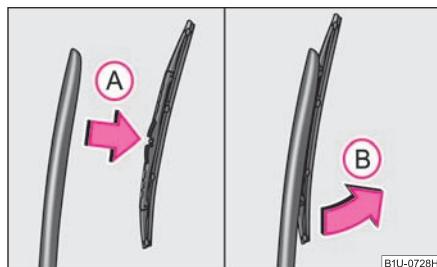


Fig. 52 Wiper blade for rear window

Taking off the wiper blade

- Fold the window wiper arm away **⇒ fig. 52.**
- Hold the window wiper arm at the top end with one hand.
- Take hold of the wiper blade in the middle with the other hand and take off the wiper blade by moving in direction of arrow **(B).**

Attaching a wiper blade

- Interlock the wiper blade into the window wiper arm - see arrow **(A).**
- Check whether the wiper blade is correctly attached.

The same remarks apply here as for **⇒ page 53, "Replacing wiper blades for the windscreen wipers".**

Rear-view mirror

Manual dimming interior rear-view mirror

Adjust the rear mirror before commencing to drive so that there is a clear view to the rear.

Basic setting

- Pull the lever on the bottom edge of the mirror forward.

Dimming mirror

- Pull the lever on the bottom edge of the mirror back. ■

Exterior mirror

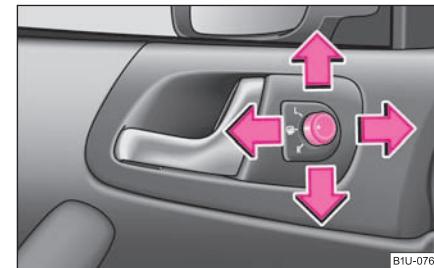


Fig. 53 Inner part of door: Rotary knob

The heating of the external mirror functions only when ignition is switched on.

Electrically adjustable exterior mirrors*

Carry out the adjustment at the set button next to the inner door handle when the ignition is switched on **⇒ fig. 53.**

Position

Heating of the exterior mirrors (only on vehicles with electrically operated power windows).

Position L

Operating the left and right mirrors at the same time (valid for vehicles with electrically operated power windows).

Operating the left mirror (valid for vehicles without electrically operated power windows).



Position R

Operating the right mirror.

⚠ WARNING

- Convex (curved outward) or spherical (differently curved) exterior mirrors increase the vision field. They do, however, make objects appear smaller in the mirror. These mirrors are only of limited use, therefore, for estimating distances to the following vehicles.
- Use whenever possible the interior rear mirror, for estimating the distances to the following vehicles.

i Note

- Do not touch the surfaces of the exterior mirrors if the exterior mirror heater is switched on.
- You can set the exterior mirrors by hand, if the power setting function fails at any time by pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.
- Contact your specialist garage if a fault exists with the power setting of the exterior mirrors. ■

Seats and Storage

Front seats

Basic information

The front seats have a wide range of different settings and can thus be matched to the physical characteristics of the driver and front passenger. Correct adjustment of the seats is particularly important for:

- safely and quickly reaching the controls;
- a relaxed, fatigue-free body position;
- **achieving the maximum protection offered by the seat belts and the airbag system.**

WARNING

- Never transport more occupants than the maximum seating in the vehicle.
- Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened ⇒ page 115, "Transporting children safely" with a suitable restraint system.
- The front seats and the head restraints must always be adjusted to match the body size of the seat occupant as well as the seat belts must always be correctly fastened in order to provide an optimal protection for you and your occupants.
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the vehicle is being driven - never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. This is particularly important for the front seat passenger. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!
- It is important for the driver and front passenger to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel or dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.

WARNING (continued)

- Ensure that there are no objects in the footwell as any objects may get behind the pedals during a driving or braking manoeuvre. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, to brake or accelerate. ■

Adjusting the front seats

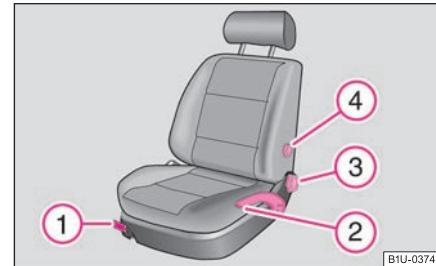


Fig. 54 Controls at seat

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

- Pull the lever ① ⇒ fig. 54 up and push the seat into the desired position.
- Release the lever ① and push the seat further until the lock is heard to engage.

Adjusting height of seat*

- Lift the seat if required by pulling or pumping lever ② upwards.
- Lower the seat if required by pushing or pumping lever ② downwards.

Adjust the angle of the seat backrest

- Relieve any pressure on the seat backrest (do not lean on it) and turn the handwheel ③ ⇒ fig. 54 to adjust the desired angle of the backrest.

Adjusting lumbar support*

- Turn the wheel ④ until you have set the most comfortable curvature of the seat upholstery in the area of your spine.

The driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the pedals can be fully pressed to the floor with slightly bent legs.

The seat backrest on the driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the upper point of the steering wheel can be easily reached with slightly bent arms.

WARNING

- Only adjust the driver seat when the vehicle is stationary - risk of injury!
- Take care when adjusting the seat! Adjusting the seat without care can lead to bruises or injuries.
- The seat backrests must not be angled too far back when driving otherwise this will affect proper operation of the seat belts and of the airbag system - risk of injury! ■

Adjusting front seats electrically*

Adjusting seats

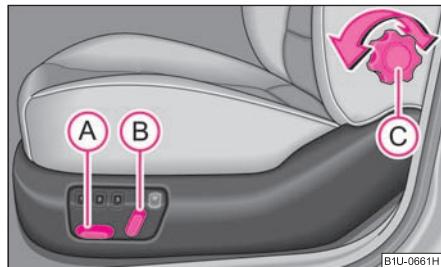


Fig. 55 Side view: Controls for adjusting the seat
B1U-0661H

Adjusting seat

- Adopt the correct seated position ⇒ page 56.
- Press the switch ① or ② in the direction of the desired setting ⇒ fig. 55.

Adjusting lumbar support

- Adjust the lumbar support mechanically by turning the rotary knob ③.

Switch ① is operated in order to move the seat up/down and forward/back, while switch ② is operated in order to move the seat backrest forward or back.

WARNING

- Only adjust the driver seat when the vehicle is stationary - risk of injury!
- Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer injuries or bruises as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.
- In view of the fact that the seats can also be adjusted when the ignition is switched off (even when ignition key withdrawn), you should never leave children unattended in the vehicle.
- The seat backrests must not be angled too far back when driving otherwise this will affect proper operation of the seat belts and of the airbag system - risk of injury! ■

Note

If the movement of the seat is inadvertently interrupted during an adjustment, once again press the switch in the appropriate direction and continue with the adjustment of the seat to the end. ■

Storing setting

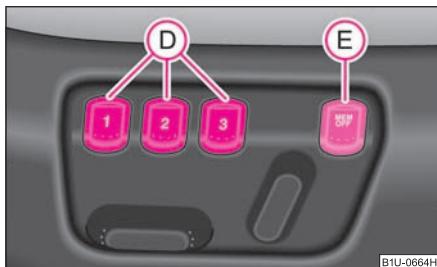


Fig. 56 Driver seat: Memory buttons and the button MEM OFF
B1U-0664H

Storing seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward

- Switch on the ignition.
- Adjust the seat ⇒ page 57.
- Adjust both exterior mirrors ⇒ page 54.
- Press one of the memory buttons **D** and hold the button pressed for about 3 seconds until an audible signal confirms that the setting has been stored. The setting of this button was stored.

Storing exterior mirror setting for reversing*

- Switch on the ignition.
- Turn the exterior mirror control to position **R** ⇒ page 54.
- Engage the reverse gear.
- Move the right exterior mirror into the desired position ⇒ page 54.
- Press one of the memory buttons **D** and hold the button pressed for about 3 seconds until an audible signal confirms that the setting has been stored. The setting of the selected button was stored.

The memory system can be deactivated at any time with the button **E**. The seat and the exterior mirrors can also be manually operated.

Memory buttons

Memory for the seat offers the possibility to store the individual driver seat and external mirror position. An individual position can be allocated to each of the three memory buttons **D** ⇒ page 58, fig. 56, that is three in total. By pressing the appropriate memory button **D** the seat and external mirror will automatically move into the position allocated to this button ⇒ page 59.



Note

- When storing settings with the memory buttons, we recommend that you begin with the front button and assign a memory button to each additional driver.
- Each new setting stored with the same button erases the previous setting.
- Each time you store the seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward you also have to re-store the individual setting of the exterior mirror on the passenger side for reversing. ■

Assigning radio remote control* to the memory buttons

After storing the settings of the seat and exterior mirrors, you have 10 seconds in order to assign the radio remote control to the appropriate memory button.

- Withdraw the ignition key.
- Press the release button ⇒ page 39 and hold it pressed for 1 second until an audible signal confirms that the setting has been stored. The setting is stored with the memory button which you have selected.

If you wish to be able to retrieve the settings which are stored in the memory by also using the radio remote control, you have to assign the radio remote control to a memory button in each case.

If you wish, you can obtain an additional remote control key from a specialist garage and then assign the remote control key to another memory button.



Note

- If the radio remote control had previously been assigned to another memory button, this setting is then erased by the new assignment.



- If you assign the radio remote control to a memory button which has already been assigned to a radio remote control, the old assignment is also replaced by a new assignment in this case.
- The assignment of the radio remote control to a memory button is retained, however, after reassigning the seats and exterior mirrors. ■

Retrieving seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward

You can retrieve the stored settings either with the memory button (D) or also with the radio remote control*.

Retrieving the settings of the seat and mirrors can only be carried out **when the ignition is switched off** for safety reasons. Retrieving the settings can be carried out in two different ways:

Retrieving settings with memory buttons

- **By pressing briefly:** with the door open, operate the desired memory button (D) ⇒ page 58, fig. 56 with one-touch. The seat and the exterior mirrors now move automatically into the stored position.
- **By pressing for a long period of time:** with the driver door open or closed, press and hold the desired memory button (D) until the seat and the exterior mirrors have moved into the stored position.

Retrieving settings with remote control*

- If the driver door is closed and the ignition is switched off, briefly press the unlock button of the radio remote control ⇒ page 39 and then open the driver door.
- The seat and exterior mirrors now move automatically into the stored positions.

Retrieving setting of exterior mirror for reversing*

- Turn the rotary knob for the exterior mirror setting into the position R ⇒ page 54 before engaging the reverse gear.

Emergency Off

- Press any button on the driver seat.

Note

If the memory button is pressed once again during the automatic setting of the seat and the exterior mirrors, the setting operation is interrupted. After repeated pressing of the same button, the setting operation is continued to the end. If one of the two remaining memory buttons is pressed, the stored setting of this button is retrieved. ■

Information concerning the off switch (E) of the memory system

After pressing the off switch (E) ⇒ page 58, fig. 56 of the memory system, the memory system is deactivated. You can only adjust the seat and the exterior mirrors manually. You can switch on the memory system again by once again pressing the off switch (E) of the memory system. The setting is not carried out to the end if a retrieved setting operation is interrupted.

We recommend that you switch off the memory system with the off switch (E) if the vehicle is used for a short period by a driver and you do not wish to store any particular settings of the seat and mirrors in this case. ■

Head restraints

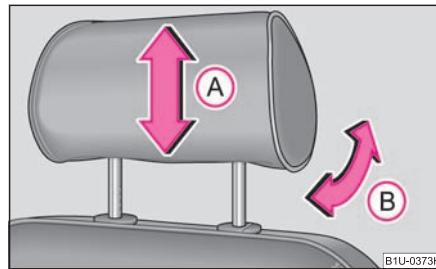


Fig. 57 Head restraint: adjusting ►

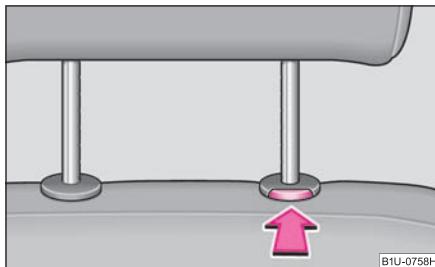


Fig. 58 Removing a head restraint

Best protection is achieved if the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head.

Adjusting the height of a head restraint

- Grasp the side of the head restraint with both hands and push the head restraint up or down in direction of arrow **(A)** ⇒ page 59, fig. 57.

Adjusting the angle of a head restraint

- The head restraint can be matched to the head of the occupant by adjusting the angle in the direction of the arrow **(B)** ⇒ page 59, fig. 57. Adjusting the angle of the head restraint provides enhanced comfort for the user.

Removing and installing a head restraint

- Pull the head restraint out of the seat backrest as far as the stop.
- Press the locking button in the direction of arrow ⇒ page 60, fig. 58 and pull the head restraint out.
- To re-insert the head restraint, push it down into the seat backrest far enough until you hear the locking button engage.

The head restraints must be adjusted to match the size of the seat occupant. Correctly adjusted head restraints together with the seat belts offer effective protection for the occupants ⇒ page 98.

WARNING

- The head restraints must be correctly adjusted in order to offer effective protection for the occupants in the event of an accident.
- Do not drive under any circumstance with removed head restraints – risk of injury! ■

Rear seats

Folding the rear seats forwards

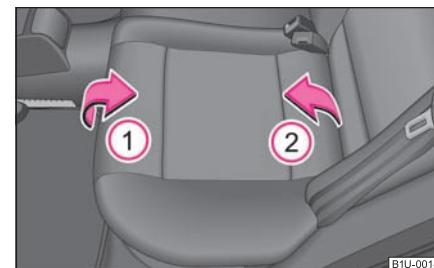


Fig. 59 Folding the seat cushion forwards

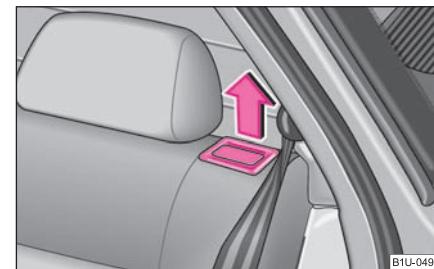


Fig. 60 Unlock the seat backrest

The luggage compartment can be increased in size by folding the rear seats forwards. Before folding the rear seats forwards, it is required to adapt the position of the front ►

seats and the armrest in such a way that no mutual deformation or damage can occur to the seats.

Folding seats forwards

- Before folding the rear seats forwards, you must adapt the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged when the rear seats are folded forwards.
- Pull up the seat cushion in direction of arrow ① and fold forwards in direction of arrow ② ⇒ page 60, fig. 59.
- Unlock the seat backrests by pulling the securing knob ⇒ page 60, fig. 60 and fold them forwards.
- Remove the head restraints from the seat backrests and fold the backrests completely forwards.
- The head restraints can be inserted into the relevant holes of the folded forward seat cushions.

If the front seats are too far back, we recommend that you have the rear head restraints removed before the seat backrests are folded forward. Store the removed head restraints in such a way that they cannot be damaged or soiled. Please refer to the guidelines ⇒ page 63, "luggage compartment". ■

Move seats into the initial position

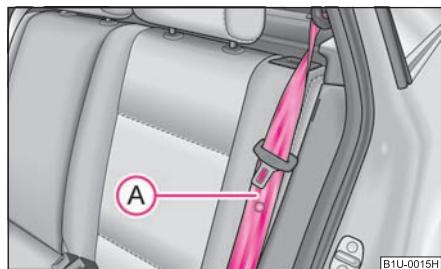


Fig. 61 Lock the seat backrest

Move seats into the initial position

- Install the head restraints in the slightly lifted seat backrest.
- Place the rear lateral seat belt (A) ⇒ fig. 61 behind the edge of the side trim panel.
- Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the securing knob clicks into place - check by pulling on the seat backrest.
- Move the seat cushion into its original position.

! WARNING

- The belts and the belt locks must be in their original position after folding back the seat cushions and the seat backrests - they must be ready to use.
- The seat backrests must be securely interlocked in position so that no objects in the luggage compartment can slide into the passenger compartment if there is sudden braking - risk of injury!
- Pay attention that the seat backrests are correctly interlocked. It is only then that the three-point seat belt for the middle seat can reliably fulfil its function.
- Before folding the seat backrest back into the secure position, place the rear lateral seat belt behind the edge of the side trim panel. Take suitable measures to prevent that the seat belt is jammed between the seat backrest and the side trim panel and is thus damaged. ■

Removing the seat cushion

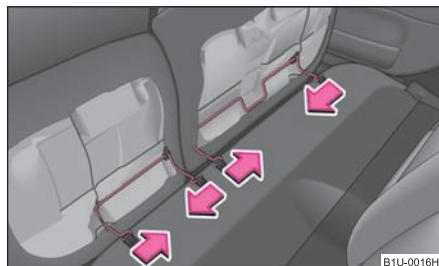


Fig. 62 Removing seat cushions ►

The luggage compartment can be increased further in size by removing the rear seat.

Removing

- Fold the seat cushion forwards completely.
- Press the wire clamps in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 62 and remove the seat cushion from its holder.

Installing

- Press the wire clamps in the direction of the arrow and place it in its holder.
- Fold the seat cushion back into its original position. ■

Seat heating of the front seats*



Fig. 63 Dash panel: Control dial for heating the front seats

You can electrically heat the seat cushions and the seat backrests of the front seats when the ignition is switched on.

Front seats

- Heating on the driver's and front passenger's seat can be switched on and regulated by turning the control dial ⇒ fig. 63.
- The system is switched off by turning the control dial to the home position "0".

WARNING

If, as an occupant, you have a subdued pain and/or temperature sensitivity, e.g. through medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend not to use the seat heating. This can lead to burns on the back, the posterior and the legs which are difficult to heal. If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that in specific cases as mentioned above the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

Caution

- You should not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply pressure at specific points in order to avoid damaging the heating elements of the seat heaters.
- Do not clean the seats moist ⇒ page 142.

Note

- The seat heating should only be switched on when the engine is running. This has a significant effect of saving on the battery capacity.
- If the on-board voltage drops, the seat heating is switched off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control. ■

Pedals

Concerning a secure depressing of the pedal, you should use only footmats from the Škoda genuine accessories.

Operation of the pedals must not be hindered!

WARNING

- Greater pedal distances may be needed when there is a fault in the brake system.
- Do not place any footmats or other additional floor coverings in the area of the pedals in order to ensure that all the pedals can be fully depressed and are able to return unobstructed to their initial position - risk of accident! ▶

WARNING (continued)

- There must be no objects on the floor which could roll under the pedals. You would then no longer be able to apply the brakes, operate the clutch or accelerator – risk of accident! ■

luggage compartment

Loading the luggage compartment

Please observe the following in the interest of having good handling characteristics of your vehicle:

- Distribute the items of luggage as evenly as possible.
- Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
- Attach the items of luggage to the lashing eyes or the fixing net* ⇒ page 64.

In the event of an accident, there is such a high kinetic energy which is produced by small and light objects that they can cause severe injuries. The magnitude of the kinetic energy depends on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the object. The speed at which the vehicle is travelling is in this case the more significant factor.

Example: In the event of a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, an unsecured object with a weight of 4.5 kg produces an energy, which corresponds to 20 times its own weight. This means that it results in a weight of approx. 90 kg. You can imagine the injuries that can occur, if this "bullet" is flying through the interior compartment and hits an occupant.

WARNING

- Stow the objects in the luggage compartment and attach them to the lashing eyes.
- Loose objects in the passenger compartment can be thrown forward during a sudden manoeuvre or in case of an accident and can injure the occupants or other oncoming traffic. This risk is still increased, if the objects which are flying

WARNING (continued)

around are hit by a deployed airbag. In this case, the objects which are thrown back can injure the occupants – hazard.

- Please note that the handling properties of your vehicle may be affected when transporting heavy objects as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.
- The items carried in the luggage compartment should be stowed in such a way that no objects are able to slip forward if there are any sudden driving or braking manoeuvres undertaken – risk of injury!
- Never drive with the boot lid fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- On no account exceed the permissible axle loads and the permissible gross weight of the vehicle – risk of accident!
- Never transport occupants in the luggage compartment!

Caution

Please ensure that the heating elements of the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of objects sliding in this area.

Note

Tyre pressure must be adjusted to the load ⇒ [page 160, fig. 153.](#) ■

Lashing eyes

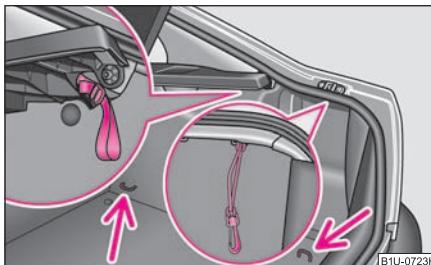


Fig. 64 Luggage compartment:
Lashing eyes (Octavia)

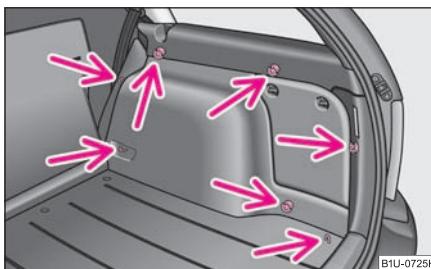


Fig. 65 Luggage compartment:
Lashing eyes (Combi)

You can use the mounts which can be fitted in the openings in the body (Octavia) \Rightarrow page 64, fig. 64 or the mounts for fixing nets (Combi) \Rightarrow fig. 65, the eyes are located on the luggage compartment floor.

You can also attach a floor fixing net* to these eyes for holding small objects.

The floor fixing net* together with the installation instruction are stowed in a container under the floor covering of the luggage compartment behind the spare wheel.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- If the items of luggage or objects are attached to the lashing eyes with unsuitable or damaged lashing straps, injuries can occur in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents. In order to prevent the items of luggage being thrown forward, always use suitable lashing straps which are firmly attached to the lashing eyes. ■

Fixing nets - Net programme Octavia*

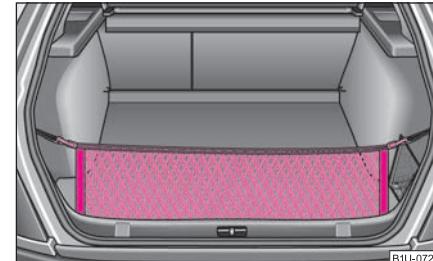


Fig. 66 Fixing net: Double horizontal pocket

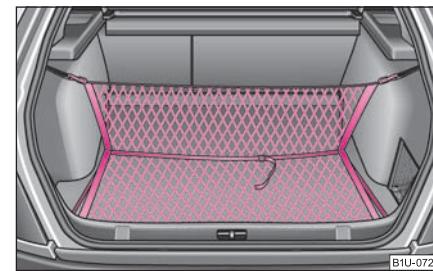


Fig. 67 Fixing net: double horizontal pocket, floor fixing net

⚠ WARNING

- The load to be transported must be fixed in place in such a way that it cannot move during the journey and when braking.

Fixing examples of the fixing net as double horizontal pocket \Rightarrow fig. 66 and floor net \Rightarrow fig. 67.

The fixing net and the installation instruction are located in a container under the floor covering of the luggage compartment behind the spare wheel.

WARNING

The whole strength of the net makes it possible to load the pocket with objects of up to 1.5 kg in weight. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury and net damage!

Caution

Do not place any objects with sharp edges in the nets – risk of net damage. ■

Fixing nets - Net programme Combi*

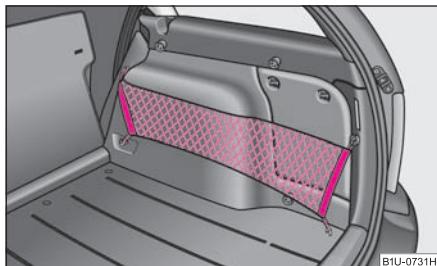


Fig. 68 Fixing net: Double vertical pocket

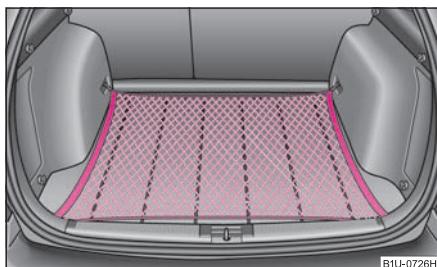


Fig. 69 Fixing net: Floor net

Fixing examples of the fixing net as double vertical pocket ⇒ fig. 68 and floor net ⇒ fig. 69.

The fixing net and the installation instruction are located in a container under the floor covering of the luggage compartment behind the spare wheel.

WARNING

The whole strength of the net makes it possible to load the pocket with objects of up to 1.5 kg in weight. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury and net damage!

Caution

Do not place any objects with sharp edges in the nets – risk of net damage. ■

Fixing floor covering of the luggage compartment

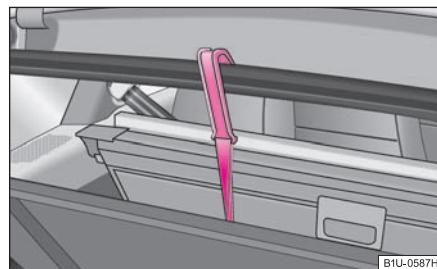
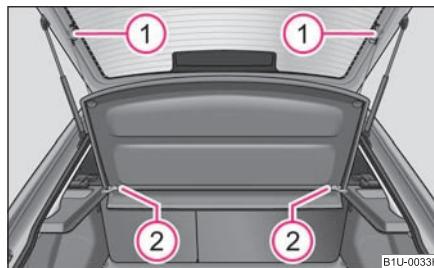


Fig. 70 Luggage compartment:
Fixing of the floor covering
(Combi)

A plastic hook is located on the handle of the luggage compartment cover. When handling the spare wheel, you can fix the raised floor covering with the hook on the frame of the luggage compartment ⇒ fig. 70. ■

Luggage compartment cover (Octavia)

You can use the luggage compartment cover behind the head restraints for storing light and soft items.



B1U-0033H

Fig. 71 Removing the luggage compartment cover

The luggage compartment cover can be removed as required if one must transport bulky goods.

- Unhook the support straps (1) \Rightarrow fig. 71.
- Place the cover in the horizontal position.
- Pull the cover out of the holder (2) horizontally to the rear.
- Install again by pushing the luggage compartment cover forwards into the holder (2) and hanging the support straps (1) on the boot lid.

You can stow the removed luggage compartment cover behind the rear seat backrest.

WARNING

No objects should be placed on the luggage compartment cover, the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.

Caution

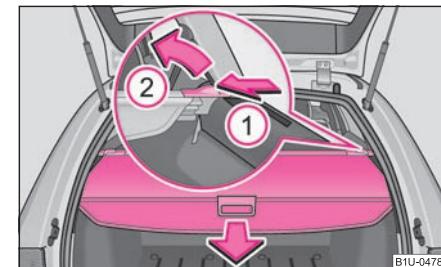
Please ensure that the heating elements of the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of objects placed in this area.



Note

Opening the tailgate also lifts up the luggage compartment cover. ■

Foldable luggage compartment cover (Combi)



B1U-0478H

Fig. 72 Luggage compartment: removing the foldable luggage compartment cover

Pulling out

- Pull the foldable luggage compartment cover in direction of arrow \Rightarrow fig. 72.
- Hang the luggage compartment cover in the recesses on the side of the luggage compartment.

Folding

- Pull the foldable cover out of the recesses, the cover is folded up.

Removing

- Have the foldable luggage compartment cover removed to transport bulky goods by pressing on the side of the cross rod in direction of arrow (1) and taking it out by moving it in direction of arrow (2) \Rightarrow fig. 72.

WARNING

No objects should be placed on the luggage compartment cover.

Caution

Please ensure that the heating elements of the rear window heater and the foldable luggage compartment cover are not damaged as a result of objects placed in this area. ■

Variable loading floor* (Combi)

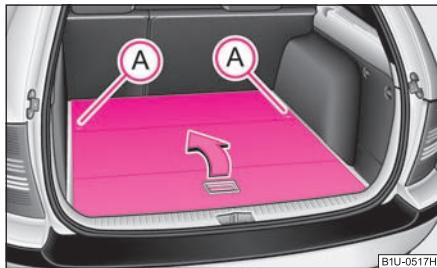


Fig. 73 Variable loading floor

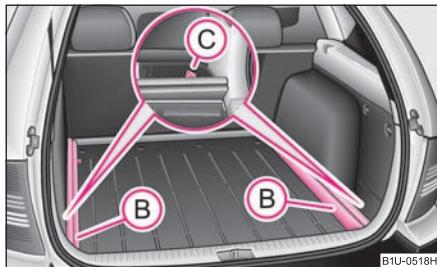


Fig. 74 Luggage compartment:
Remove carrier rails

The variable loading floor makes it easier to handle bulky goods and creates an even luggage compartment floor when the rear seats are folded forward. The maximum permissible surface load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg.

Removing the variable loading floor

- Unlock the loading floor by turning the locking bolts (A) by approx. 90° to the left
⇒ fig. 73.
- Fold together the loading floor and take it out by moving in direction of arrow.

Remove carrier rails

- Unlock the carrier rails (B) by turning the arbor-mounted fixing eyes (C) to the right by approx. 90° and take out the carrier rails.

Install carrier rails

- Place the carrier rails (B) in the original position and attach them with the aid of the mountable fixing eyes (C) by turning to the left by approx. 90° at the fixed eyes of the body.

Installing the variable loading floor

- Place the loading floor once folded together onto the carrier rails.
- Fold open the loading floor.
- Lock the loading floor by turning the locking bolts (A) by approx. 90° to the right.



WARNING

Pay attention when installing that the carrier rails and the variable loading floor are correctly fixed, otherwise the occupants are at risk. ■

Divide the luggage compartment with variable loading floor*

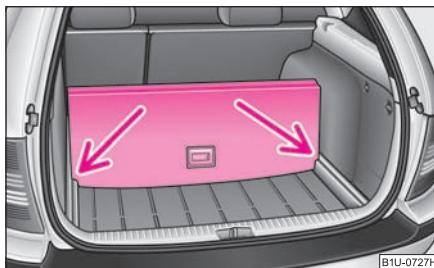


Fig. 75 Divide the luggage compartment

The luggage compartment can be divided with the variable loading floor.

- Lift up a part of the loading floor with the handle and secure it by moving it into the grooves ⇒ fig. 75. ■

Net partition (Combi)*

Use the net partition behind the rear seats

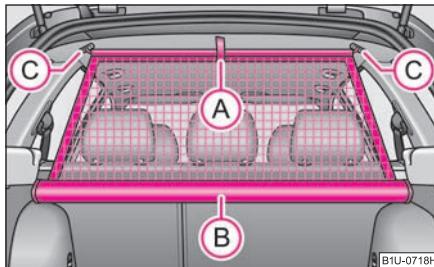


Fig. 76 Pull out the net partition

The net partition can either be installed behind the rear seats or behind the front seats. Before using the net partition, remove the foldable cover ⇒ page 66.

Pulling out

- Pull the net partition out of the housing (B) at an angle of about 45° in direction of the boot lid at the loop (A).
- Insert the cross rod into the mount (C) first on the one side and push the cross rod forwards.
- In the same way, fix the cross rod to the other side of the vehicle, mount (C).

Folding

- Push the cross rod first of all on the one side and then on the other side towards the rear.
- Take the cross rod out of the mounts (C).
- Roll the net partition at an angle of approx. 45° towards the boot lid in the housing (B), so that it does not roll up automatically.

WARNING

- First check for yourself that the cross road is inserted into the mounts (C) in the front position! ■

Using the net partition behind the front seats

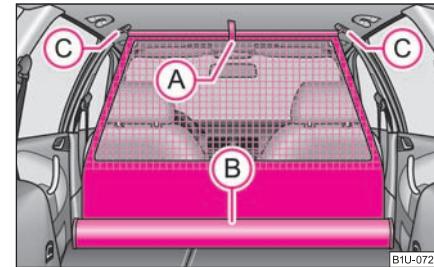


Fig. 77 Pull out the net partition ►

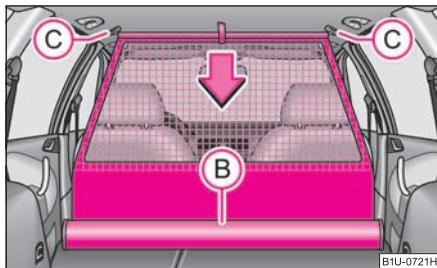


Fig. 78 Roll up net partition

Pulling out

- Fold the rear seats forwards ⇒ page 60
- Pull the net partition net at the plate **(A)** out of the housing **(B)** ⇒ page 68, fig. 77.
- Insert the cross rod into the mount **(C)** first on the one side and push the cross rod forwards.
- In the same way, fix the cross rod to the other side of the vehicle, mount **(C)**.

Folding

- Pull the cross rod back slightly, first on the one side then on the other side and take the cross rod out of the mounts **(C)** ⇒ fig. 78.
- Hold the cross rod in such a way that the luggage net partition can roll up slowly and without damage into the housing **(B)**.
- Fold the rear seats back into their original position.

⚠ WARNING

- The belt locks and the belts must be in their original position after folding back the seat cushions and the seat backrests - they must be ready to use.
- The seat backrests must be securely interlocked in position so that no objects in the luggage compartment can slide into the passenger compartment if there is sudden braking - risk of injury!

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- First check for yourself that the cross road is inserted into the mounts **(C)** in the front position! ■

Removing and installing net partition housing

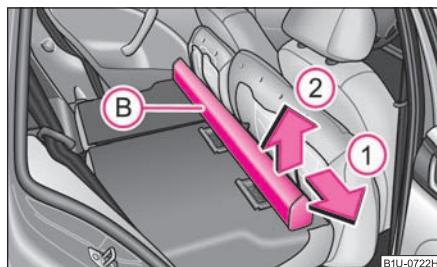


Fig. 79 Rear seats: Net partition housing

Removing

- Fold the rear seats forwards ⇒ page 60
- Open the right rear door.
- Push the net partition housing **(B)** in the direction of arrow **(1)** up to the stop and take it out of the mounts of the seat backrest in direction of arrow **(2)**.

Installing

- Position the net partition housing into the mounts of the rear seat backrests.
- Push the luggage net partition housing in the opposite direction of arrow **(1)** as far as the stop.
- Fold the rear seats back into their original position. ■

The roof rack*

Description

Pay attention to the following points if you wish to transport luggage or other items on the roof of your vehicle:

- A special roof luggage rack system was developed for the vehicle, that is why you should only use a roof luggage rack which has been released for use by Škoda Auto.
- The base carrier is the basis for a complete roof luggage rack system. Separate additional holders are required for safety reasons for transporting luggage, bikes, surfboards, skis and boats.
- The basic version of the roof luggage rack system and further components are obtainable as accessories from the specialist garages.

Caution

- If you use other roof rack systems or if the roof bars are not properly fitted, then any damage which may result to your car is not covered by the warranty agreements. It is therefore essential to pay attention to the fitting instructions supplied with the roof luggage rack system.
- On models fitted with a power sliding/tilting roof, ensure that the opened sliding/tilting roof does not strike any items of luggage transported on the roof.
- Ensure that the opened boot lid does not collide with the roof load.

For the sake of the environment

The increased aerodynamic drag results in a higher fuel consumption. One should therefore take off the roof bar system after use.

Note

A roof rail is obtainable from a specialist garage if hasn't been fitted onto an estate car at the works, which carries out the professional fitting. ■

Lashing points (Octavia)

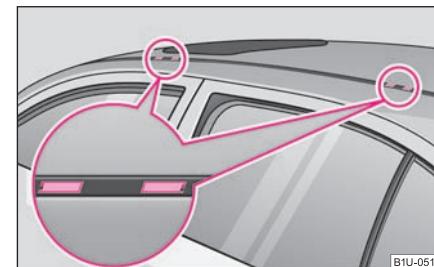


Fig. 80 Attachment points for base roof carrier

Installing

- The plastic caps ⇒ fig. 80 can be removed by inserting a thin screwdriver into the recess of the caps and carefully lever out the caps to avoid paint damage.
- The feet are inserted into the openings of the roof bars.

Note

- Pay attention to the information regarding assembly and disassembly in the attached instructions.
- If you have any questions, please contact a specialist garage.
- The figure is not valid for an estate car. ■

Roof load

Distribute weight evenly over the roof luggage rack system. The maximum permissible roof load (including roof rack system) of **75 kg** and the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle should not be exceeded.

You cannot make full use of the permissible roof load if you use a roof luggage rack system with a lower load carrying capacity. The load transported on the roof luggage rack system must not exceed the weight limit which is stated in the fitting instructions. ►

⚠ WARNING

- The items which you transport on the roof bar system must be reliably attached - risk of accident!
- You must on no account exceed the permissible roof load, the permissible axle loads and the permissible gross weight of your vehicle - risk of accident!
- Please note that the handling properties of your vehicle change when you transport heavy or bulky items on the roof bar system as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity and the increased wind attack area - risk of accident! You must absolutely adapt your style of driving and the speed of the vehicle to the specific circumstances. ■

Cup holder in front centre console

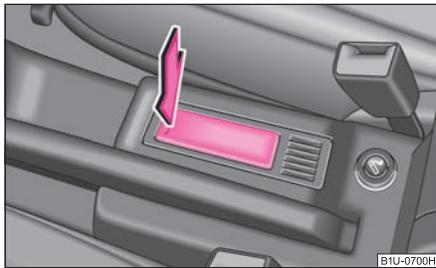


Fig. 81 Front centre console:
Cup holder

After pressing in direction of arrow, the cup holder slides out and opens up ⇒ fig. 81.

It is designed to place drink cans or other beverage packagings in (with a content of 0.33°litr. or 0.5°litr.).

⚠ Caution

Do not open the beverages in the cup holder while driving. They may spill when braking and while doing so damage the vehicle. ■

Note holder

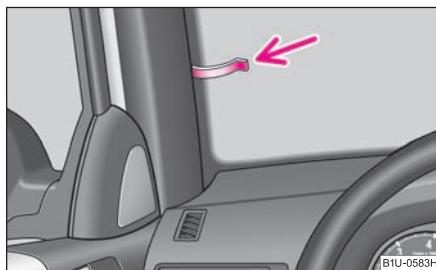


Fig. 82 Windscreen: Note holder

The note holder is designed e.g. for attaching a car park ticket in parking areas.

The attached note has to always be **removed** before starting off in order not to restrict the driver's vision. ■

⚠ WARNING

- Do not place any hot beverages into the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill - risk of scalding!
- Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). You might be injured by them in the event of an accident.

Ashtray*

Front ashtray

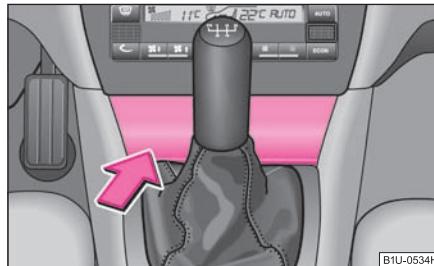


Fig. 83 Centre console: Front ashtray
B1U-0534H

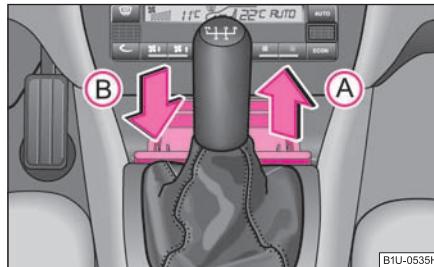


Fig. 84 Remove ashtray and
replace
B1U-0535H

Opening ashtray

- Press on the bottom part of the cover of the ashtray at the point of the arrow ⇒ fig. 83.

Removing ashtray insert

- Remove the ashtray insert in direction of arrow (A).

Insert ashtray insert

- Insert the ashtray insert and press it slightly in direction of arrow (B).

WARNING

Never lay flammable objects in the ashtray basin – risk of fire! ■

Rear ashtray

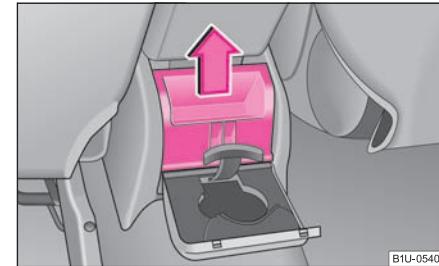


Fig. 85 Low centre console: Rear
ashtray
B1U-0540H

Removing ashtray

- Fold the cover backwards and remove the ashtray in direction of arrow.

Replacing ashtray

- Press the ashtray vertically downwards and fold the cover down.

There is a can holder attached to the inner side of the ashtray cover.

WARNING

Never lay flammable objects in the ashtray basin – risk of fire! ■

Cigarette lighter*, power sockets

Cigarette lighter

You can also use the socket on the cigarette lighter for other electrical appliances.

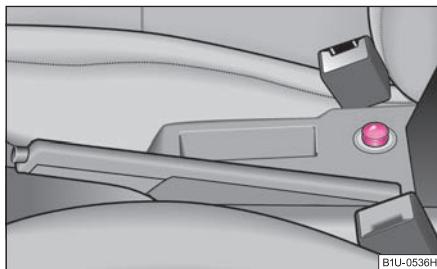


Fig. 86 Centre console: Cigarette lighter

Using the cigarette lighter

- Press in the button of the cigarette lighter \Rightarrow fig. 86.
- Wait until the button jumps forward.
- Remove the cigarette lighter immediately and use it.
- Insert the cigarette lighter again into the socket.

Using the socket

- Take out the cigarette lighter.
- Insert the plug of the electrical appliance into the socket of the cigarette lighter.

The 12 volt power socket can also be used to supply power to additional electrical accessories with a power uptake up to 120 watts.

WARNING

- Take care when using the cigarette lighter! Not paying proper attention or incorrect use of the cigarette lighter in an uncontrolled manner may result in burns.
- The cigarette lighter and the power socket also operates when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key withdrawn. You should therefore never leave children unattended in the vehicle.

Caution

Always use matching plugs to avoid damaging the power socket.

Note

- Connecting electrical components when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle - risk of battery draining!
- Further information \Rightarrow page 166, "Accessories, changes and replacement of parts".

Power socket in the luggage compartment (Combi)

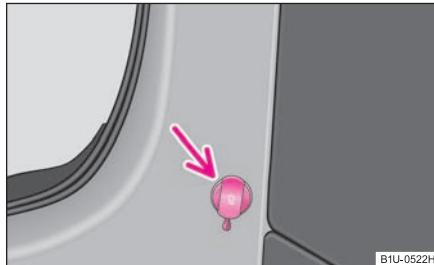


Fig. 87 Luggage compartment: Power socket

The socket is located on the left in the luggage compartment.

- Open the cover of the power socket \Rightarrow fig. 87.
- Connect the plug of the electrical appliance to the socket.

The power socket, which fulfils the requirements of DIN standard ISO 4165, must only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a power uptake of up to 120 watts. The vehicle battery will be discharged in the process if the engine is stationary.

The same remarks apply here as for ⇒ page 73.

Further information ⇒ page 166, "Accessories, changes and replacement of parts". ■

Storage compartments

Overview

You will find the following storage facilities in your vehicle:

Storage compartment on the front passenger side	⇒ page 74
Storage compartment below steering wheel	⇒ page 9
Storage compartment in the middle part of the dash panel	⇒ page 9
Storage compartment for spectacles*	⇒ page 75
Storage compartment in the front doors	⇒ page 9
Front seat armrest with storage compartment*	⇒ page 75
Rear armrest with storage compartment*	⇒ page 76
Clothes hooks*	⇒ page 76

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Ensure that when driving no objects from the centre console or from other storage possibilities may get into the footwell of the driver. You would then no longer be able to apply the brakes, operate the clutch or accelerator – risk of accident! ■

Storage compartment on the front passenger side



Fig. 88 Dash panel: Storage compartment on the front passenger side

Opening and closing the storage compartment on the front passenger side

- Pull the handle of the lid in direction of arrow ⇒ fig. 88 and fold it downwards.
- Raise the lid and press it until the catch is heard to engage.

The storage compartment can be locked and unlocked using the vehicle key (if the storage compartment is lockable*).

⚠ WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons. ■

⚠ WARNING

- Please do not place anything on top of the dash panel. Such objects might slide or fall down when driving (when accelerating or cornering) and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic situation – risk of accident!
- Use the storage compartments in the door panels only for small items which do not project out of the compartment in order to avoid any interference with the proper operation of the side airbags.

Storage compartment for spectacles*

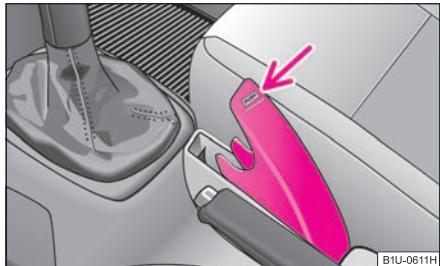


Fig. 89 Centre console: Storage compartment for spectacles
B1U-0611H

Opening and closing the storage compartment for spectacles

- Press on the cover of the storage compartment at the point of the arrow, the compartment opens or closes ⇒ fig. 89.

Removing

- Open the storage compartment in the vertical position and take it out by pulling on the hinge.

Installing

- Installation takes place in the reverse order.

WARNING

The compartment must only be opened when removing or inserting objects and otherwise must be kept closed.

Note

Do not insert particularly large spectacles. ■

Front seat armrest with storage compartment*

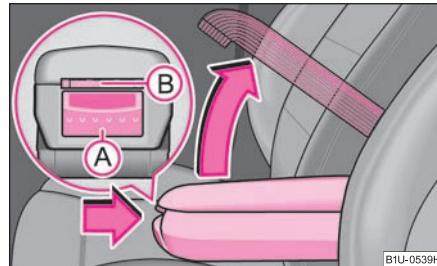


Fig. 90 Armrest: Storage compartment
B1U-0539H

The armrest is adjustable in height.

Opening storage compartment

- Press button **B** ⇒ fig. 90.
- Open the lid of the armrest in the direction of arrow.

Closing storage compartment

- Fold down the cover of the armrest.

Setting height

- Press the button **A** in direction of arrow.
- Fold the armrest downwards or upwards and release the button.

Note

The moving space of the arms can be restricted if the armrest is folded down. In city traffic the armrest should not be folded down. ■

Rear seat armrest with storage compartment*

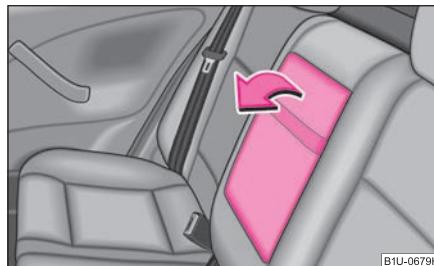


Fig. 91 Rear seats: Armrest

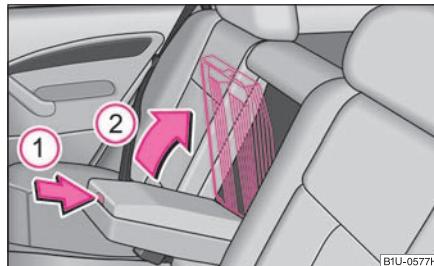


Fig. 92 Rear seats: Fold the armrest forwards

- The armrest can be folded forwards in direction of arrow with the aid of the belt
⇒ fig. 91.
- The armrest includes a storage compartment. Press the button in direction of arrow ① and open the storage compartment in direction of arrow ② ■

Clothes hooks*

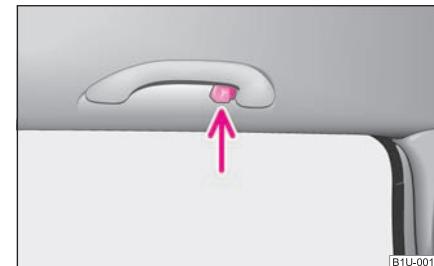


Fig. 93 Rear door: Clothes hooks

A clothes hook is located above the rear doors ⇒ fig. 93.

⚠ WARNING

- Ensure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impair your vision to the rear.
- Use the hooks for hanging only light items of clothing and ensure that there are no heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. ■

Heating and air conditioning system

Air outlet vents

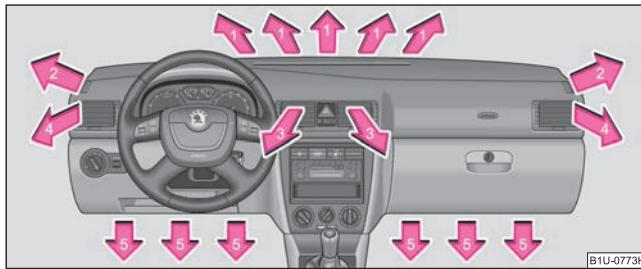


Fig. 94 Air outlet vents

Open air outlet vents

- Turn the vertical thumbwheel (not when in the end position).

Close air outlet vents

- Turn the vertical wheel into the end position.

Redirecting air flow

- Swivel upward or downward the grille of the vents in order to change the direction of the air flow using the vertically arranged thumbwheel.
- Turn the horizontal thumbwheel on the vent to the right or left in order to change the air flow to the appropriate side.

You can set the air supply to the individual air outlet vents using the control **(C)** \Rightarrow fig. 95. Air outlet vents **3** and **4** \Rightarrow fig. 94 can also be opened or closed individually.

Unwarmed or cooled air will flow out of the opened air outlet vents according to the setting of the control dial **(A)** \Rightarrow fig. 95 and according to outer atmospheric conditions. ■

Heating

Using the system

The heating system delivers air into the interior of the vehicle and warms it as required.

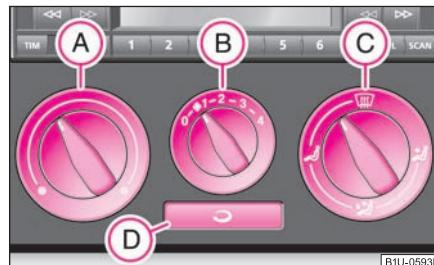


Fig. 95 Heating: Control elements

Setting temperature

- Turn the control dial **(A)** \Rightarrow fig. 95 to the right in order to increase the temperature.
- Turn the control dial **(A)** to the left in order to decrease the temperature.

Controlling blower

- Turn the blower switch **(B)** into one of the positions, 1 to 4, in order to switch the blower on.
- Turn the blower switch **(B)** into position 0 in order to switch the blower off.
- If you wish to shut off the fresh air supply, use the button **(D)** - recirculated air mode \Rightarrow **(△)**.

Control for air distribution

- You can adjust the direction of the air flow using the air distribution control **(C)** \Rightarrow page 77.

The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of ice, snow or leaves in order to ensure that the heating and ventilation systems operate properly.

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

The blower should always be on to prevent the windows from misting up.

WARNING (continued)

increases. Switch recirculated air mode off as soon as the windows begin misting up.

Note

- The whole heat output will be needed to unfrost the windscreen and side windows. No warm air will be fed to the footwell. This can lead to restriction of the heating comfort.
- The used air streams out through the air removal openings in the luggage compartment.
- The button  cannot be pressed if the control dial  is in the position  or close to this position. ■

WARNING

You should not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, divert your attention and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident

Set heating

Recommended settings of heating controls for:

Setup	Setting of the control dial			Button	Air outlet vents 3	Air outlet vents 4
						
Defrosting the windscreen and side windows	To the right up to the stop	3		Switched off	Closing	Open and align with the side window
Free windscreen and side windows from mist	In heating area	2 or 3		Switched off	Closing	Open and align with the side window
The fastest heating	To the right up to the stop	3		Switched off	Opening	Opening
Comfortable heating	Desired temperature	2 or 3	 or 	Switched off	Closing	Opening
Fresh air mode - ventilation	To the left up to the stop	Desired position		Switched off	Opening	Opening

Recirculated air mode

In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

Switching recirculated air mode on

- Press the button  - the warning light lights up in the button \Rightarrow page 77, fig. 95.

Switching recirculated air mode off

- Press again the button  - the warning light in the button goes out.

The button  cannot be pressed if the control dial  is in the position  or close to this position.

WARNING

You should not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, divert your attention and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch recirculated air mode off as soon as the windows begin misting up. ■

The air conditioning only operates if button  \Rightarrow page 80, fig. 96  is pressed and the following conditions are met:

- engine running,
- outside temperature above +5 °C and
- blower switch switched on (positions 1 to 4).

If the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and air humidity drops in the vehicle. The wellbeing of the occupants of the car is enhanced as a result of this particularly at high outside temperatures and a high air humidity. The system prevents the windows misting up during the cold season of the year.

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

It is possible to briefly activate recirculated air mode in order to enhance the cooling effect \Rightarrow .

Air at a temperature of about 5°C may flow out of the vents under certain circumstances when the cooling system is operating. Lengthy and uneven distribution of the air flow out of the vents (in particular at the leg area) and large differences in temperature, for example when getting out of the vehicle, can result in chills in sensitive persons.

The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of ice, snow or leaves in order to ensure that the heating and cooling systems operate properly.

After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is quite normal and not an indication of a leak!

WARNING

- For your own safety and that of other road users, ensure that all the windows are free of ice, snow and misting. Please familiarize yourself about how to correctly operate the heating and ventilation systems, how to demist and defrost the windows, as well as with the cooling mode.
- You should not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, divert your attention and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident ►

Air conditioning system*

Description

The air conditioning system is a combined cooling and heating system. It makes it possible to optimally control the air temperature at any season of the year.

Description of the air conditioning system

It is important for your safety and for your driving comfort that the air conditioning system is operating properly.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

increases. Switch recirculated air mode off as soon as the windows begin misting up.

i Note

- We recommend that you do not smoke in the vehicle when the recirculating air mode is operating since the smoke which is drawn at the evaporator from the interior of the vehicle forms deposits in the evaporator of the air conditioning system. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor). ■

Using the system

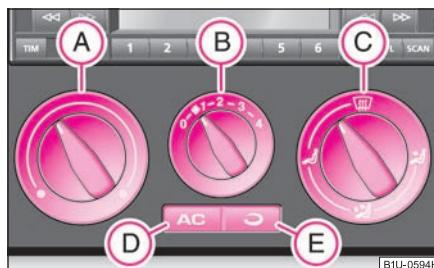


Fig. 96 The air conditioning system: Control elements

Setting temperature

- Turn the control dial **(A) ⇒ fig. 96** to the right in order to increase the temperature.
- Turn the control dial **(A)** to the left in order to increase the temperature.

Controlling blower

- Turn the blower switch **(B)** into one of the positions, 1 to 4, in order to switch the blower on.
- Turn the blower switch **(B)** into position 0 in order to switch the blower off.

- IF you wish to close the inlet for fresh air, use the switch **(D)** **(E)** - Recirculated air mode ⇒ page 82.

Control for air distribution

- You can adjust the direction of the air flow using the air distribution control **(C)** ⇒ page 77.

switching cooling on and off

- Press the button **(AC) (D) ⇒ fig. 96**. The warning light lights up in the button.
- When you again press the switch **(AC)**, the cooling system is switched off. The warning light in the button goes out.

i Note

- The whole heat output will be needed to unfrost the windscreen and side windows. No warm air will be fed to the footwell. This can lead to restriction of the heating comfort.
- The used air streams out through the air removal openings in the luggage compartment.
- If the cooling system has not been switched on for a lengthy period, odours may be produced at the evaporator because of deposits. Switch the cooling system on at least once a month for approximately 5 minutes at the highest blower stage - also during the cold season of the year - in order to avoid such odours. Also open a window for a short time.
- Please refer to the information regarding recirculated air mode ⇒ page 82. ■

Setting air conditioning system

Recommended settings of the control elements of the air conditioning system for the respective operating modes:

Setup	Setting of the control dial			Button		Air outlet vents 3	Air outlet vents 4
	(A)	(B)	(C)	(D)	(E)		
Defrosting the windscreen and side windows	To the right up to the stop	3		Switched off	Do not switch on	Closing	Open and align with the side window
Free windscreen and side windows from mist	Desired temperature	2 or 3		switched on	Do not switch on	Closing	Open and align with the side window
The fastest heating	To the right up to the stop	3		Switched off	briefly switched on	Opening	Opening
Comfortable heating	Desired temperature	2 or 3	or	Switched off	Do not switch on	Closing	Opening
the fastest cooling	To the left up to the stop	briefly 4, then 2 or 3		switched on	briefly switched on	Opening	Opening
optimal cooling	Desired temperature	1, 2 or 3		switched on	Do not switch on	Opening	Opening
Fresh air mode - ventilation	To the left up to the stop	Desired position		Switched off	Do not switch on	Opening	Opening

Recirculated air mode

In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

Switching recirculated air mode on

- Press the button  ⇒ page 80, fig. 96 - the warning light lights up in the button.

Switching recirculated air mode off

- Press again the button  - the warning light in the button goes out.

The button  cannot be pressed if the control dial  is in the position  or close to this position.

WARNING

You should not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, divert your attention and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch recirculated air mode off as soon as the windows begin misting up. ■

Using the air conditioning system economically

The compressor on the air conditioning system uses power from the engine when in cooling mode which will effect the fuel consumption.

It recommended to open the windows or the doors of a vehicle for which the interior has been strongly heated through the effect of direct sunlight in order to allow the heated air to escape.

The cooling system should not be switched on while travelling when the window is open.

The desired interior temperature can also be achieved without switching in the cooling system just by switching to fresh air mode.



For the sake of the environment

When you economize on fuel, you also reduce pollutant emissions. ■

Climatronic* (automatic air conditioning)

Description

The Climatronic system is a combination of an automatic heating, fresh air and cooling system which provides optimal comfort for the occupants of the car.

The Climatronic maintains a constant temperature fully automatically, once it has been set. This is achieved by automatically varying the temperature of the outflowing air, the blower stages and the air distribution. The system also takes into account bright sunlight which eliminates the need to alter the settings manually. The **automatic mode** ⇒ page 84 ensures maximum wellbeing of the occupants at all times of the year.

Description of Climatronic system

The cooling operates only if the following conditions are met:

- engine running,
- outside temperature above +5 °C,
- the  button is **not** pressed.

If the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and air humidity drops in the vehicle. The wellbeing of the occupants of the car is enhanced as a result of this particularly at high outside temperatures and a high air humidity. The system prevents the windows misting up during the cold season of the year.

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

It is possible to briefly activate recirculated air mode in order to enhance the cooling effect ⇒ .

The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of ice, snow or leaves in order to ensure that the heating and cooling systems operate properly. ▶

The AC compressor is switched off at a high coolant temperature in order to provide cooling at a high load of the engine.

After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is quite normal and not an indication of a leak!

If you make a change before switching off the ignition, which differs from the automatic mode, the changed functions remain stored. Only the function "circulating air" is erased 20 minutes after switching off the ignition.

Recommended setting for all periods of the year:

- Set the temperature to 22 °C (72 °F).
- Press the button **AUTO** ⇒ page 83, fig. 97.
- Move the air outlet vents **3** and **4**, so that the air flow is directed slightly upwards ⇒ page 77, fig. 94.

Switching over between degrees Celsius and degrees Fahrenheit

Press and hold the buttons **17 ECON** and **9 AUTO** ⇒ page 83, fig. 97. The information in the desired temperature measuring unit appears in the display.

WARNING

- For your own safety and that of other road users, ensure that all the windows are free of ice, snow and misting. Please familiarize yourself about how to correctly operate the heating and ventilation systems, how to demist and defrost the windows, as well as with the cooling mode.
- You should not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, divert your attention and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch recirculated air mode off as soon as the windows begin misting up.

Note

- If the cooling system has not been switched on for a lengthy period, odours may be produced at the evaporator because of deposits. Switch the cooling system on at least once a month for approximately 5 minutes at the highest blower stage - also

during the cold season of the year - in order to avoid such odours. Also open a window for a short time.

- We recommend that you do not smoke in the vehicle when the recirculating air mode is operating since the smoke which is drawn at the evaporator from the interior of the vehicle forms deposits in the evaporator of the air conditioning system. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).
- The used air streams out through the air removal openings in the luggage compartment.
- Using the cooling economically ⇒ page 82. ■

Overview of the control elements

The controls enable a separate setting of the temperature for the left and right side.

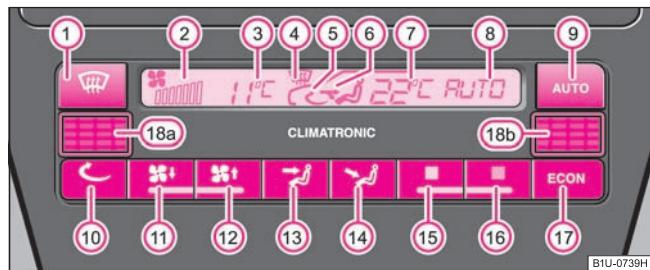


Fig. 97 Climatronic: Control elements

The buttons

- ① Defrosting the windscreen 

Display

- ② Display of blower stages
- ③ When switching off the automatic air conditioning with the button 11, the outside temperature now indicates OFF, other information is not indicated.

- ④ Defrosting the windscreens
- ⑤ Recirculated air mode 
- ⑥ Direction of air flow
- ⑦ Display of selected inside temperature, here: +22 °C
- ⑧ AUTO (automatic mode), ECON (AC compressor switched off) or OFF (Climatronic switched off)

The buttons

- ⑨ Automatic mode 
- ⑩ Recirculated air mode 
- ⑪ Lower blower speed and button for switching off the air conditioning system "OFF"
- ⑫ Higher blower speed and button for switching on the air conditioning system
- ⑬ Air flow to head
- ⑭ Air flow in the footwell
- ⑮ Decreasing the temperature
- ⑯ Increasing the temperature
- ⑰ **ECON** (AC compressor switched off, i.e. the cooling system)
- ⑱ Interior temperature sensor ⑯a (on left-hand steering models) and ⑯b (on right-hand steering models).



Note

Do not glue or cover over the sensor, otherwise it could have an unfavourable effect on the Climatronic. ■

Automatic mode

The automatic mode is used in order to maintain a constant temperature and to demist the windows in the interior of the car.

Switching automatic mode on

- Set a temperature between +18°C (64 °F) and +29°C (84 °F).
- Move the air outlet vents ③ and ④ **⇒ page 77, fig. 94**, so that the air flow is directed slightly upwards.

- Press the button **AUTO** - the warning light lights up in the button.

The automatic mode is switched off by pressing the button for the air distribution or increasing or decreasing the blower speed. The temperature is nevertheless regulated. ■

ECON mode

The cooling system is switched off in the ECON mode - heating and ventilation are regulated automatically.

Switching ECON mode on

- Press the button **ECON** - the warning light lights up in the button.
- Set a temperature between +18°C (64°F) and +29°C (84°F).

Recirculated air mode in ECON mode

- First of all press the button  - the warning light lights up in the button.
- Then press the button **ECON** - the warning light lights up in the button.

ECON mode operates only within the control temperature range from +18°C (64 °F) up to +29°C (84 °F).

The ECON mode is switched off when pressing button  or .

Please note that, in the ECON mode, the interior temperature cannot be lower than the outside temperature. The interior is not cooled and the air is not dehumidified.

If you select the temperature below +18°C (64°F), **LO** appears in the display. If you select a temperature higher than + 29°C (84 °F), **HI** appears in the display. In the **LO** position, the supplied air is neither warmed up nor cooled. In the **HI** position, the system operates continuously with maximum heating capacity.

Please refer to the information regarding recirculated air mode **⇒ page 85**. ■

Defrosting windscreens

Defrosting windscreens - switching on

- Press the button  **⇒ page 83, fig. 97**.



Defrosting windscreens – switching off

- Once again press the button  or the button **AUTO**.

The temperature control is controlled automatically. More air flows out of the air outlet vents **1** and **2**. ■

Recirculated air mode

In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

Switching recirculated air mode on

- Press the button  - the warning light lights up in the button.

Switching recirculated air mode off

- Press again the button  or the button **AUTO** - the warning light in the button goes out.

WARNING

You should not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, divert your attention and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch recirculated air mode off as soon as the windows begin misting up.

Note

If the windscreens mists up, press the button  **①** ⇒ page 83, fig. 97. After the windscreens have been demisted, press the button **AUTO**. ■

Setting temperature

You can set the interior temperature randomly with the buttons **⑯** and **⑰**.

You can set the interior temperature between +18°C (64°F) and +29°C (84 °F). The interior temperature is regulated automatically within this range. If you select the temperature below +18°C (64°F), "LO" appears in the display. If you select the temperature higher than +29°C (84 °F), "HI" appears in the display. In both limit positions the Climatronic operates at maximum cooling or heating capacity, respectively. The temperature is not controlled in this case.

Lengthy and uneven distribution of the air flow out of the vents (in particular at the leg area) and large differences in temperature, for example when getting out of the vehicle, can result in chills in sensitive persons. ■

Controlling blower

There are a total of six blower stages available.

The Climatronic system controls the blower stages automatically in line with the interior temperature. You can also, however, adapt the blower stages manually to suit your particular needs.

- Press the button **⑪** or **⑫** ⇒ page 83, fig. 97 in order to decrease or increase the speed.

Switch off the blowers, the Climatronic is switched off and in the display shows **OFF**.

The set blower speed is indicated by the lighting up of the respective number of bars at the point **②**.

WARNING

- "Stale air" may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases.
- Do not switch the Climatronic system off for longer than necessary.
- Switch the Climatronic system on as soon as the windows mist up. ■

Operational problems

If all the symbols on the display of the automatic air conditioning system flash for approx. 15 seconds after switching on the ignition, then there is a fault in the system - visit a specialist garage.

If the cooling system does not operate, the following faults may exist:

- the outside temperature is lower than +5°C,
- The compressor of the automatic air conditioning system was temporarily switched off due to a too high temperature of the coolant,
- a blown fuse.

Check the fuse, replace it if necessary ⇒ page 177. If a blown fuse is not the source of the fault, switch the Climatronic off and have it checked.

If the cooling capacity decreases, switch the Climatronic off and have it checked. ■

Starting-off and Driving

Setting steering wheel position

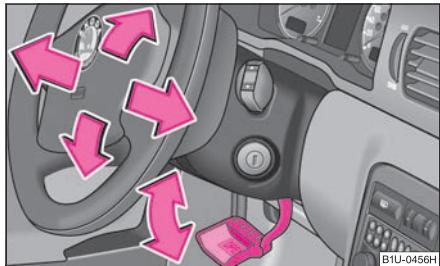


Fig. 98 Adjustable steering wheel: Lever below steering column

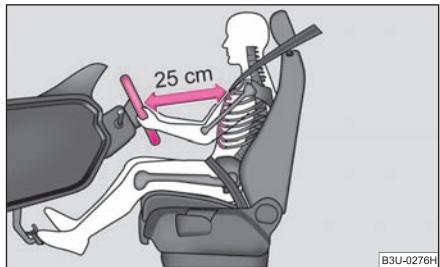


Fig. 99 Safe distance to steering wheel

You can set the height and the forward/back position of the steering wheel to the desired position.

- Adjust the driver seat ⇒ page 56.
- Pull the lever below the steering wheel down ⇒ fig. 98, ⇒ △.
- Set the steering wheel to the desired position **concerning height and forward/back position.**
- Then push the lever up against the steering column until it locks into place.

⚠ WARNING

- You must not adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving!
- The driver must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel ⇒ fig. 99. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- For safety reasons the lever must always be firmly pushed up to avoid the steering wheel altering its position unintentionally when driving – risk of accident!
- If you adjust the steering wheel further towards the head, you will reduce the protection offered by the driver airbag in the event of an accident. Check that the steering wheel is aligned to the chest.
- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position. Never hold the steering wheel firmly in the 12 o'clock position or in another way (e.g. in the middle of the steering wheel or at the inner steering wheel edge). In such cases, injuries to the arms, the hands and the head can occur when the driver airbag is deployed. ■

Ignition lock

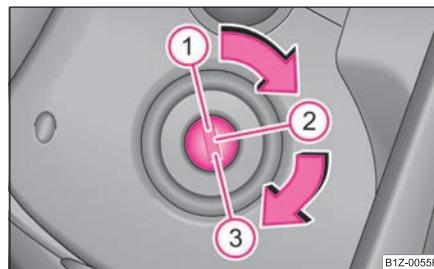


Fig. 100 Ignition lock positions ►

Petrol engines

(1) - ignition switched off, engine off, the steering can be locked.

(2) - ignition switched on

(3) - start engine

Diesel engines

(1) - interruption of fuel supply, ignition switched off, engine off, the steering can be locked.

(2) - heating glow plugs on, ignition switched on

- You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

(3) - start engine

Applies to all models:

Position (1)

To **lock the steering**, with the ignition key withdrawn, turn the steering wheel until the steering locking pin is heard to engage. You should always lock the steering as a general rule if you leave your vehicle. This acts as a deterrent against possible theft of your vehicle => .

Position (2)

Move the steering wheel back and forward a little if the ignition key cannot, or cannot easily be turned into this position, in order to release the steering lock.

Position (3)

The engine is started in this position. At the same time switched on low beam or main beam or other electrical components with major power consumption are briefly switched off. The ignition key moves back into position (2) when one releases the key.

The ignition key must be turned back into position (1) each time before starting the engine again. The starter repeat lock in the ignition lock prevents the starter being engaged when the engine is running and thus getting damaged.

WARNING

- When driving, the ignition key must always be in the position (2) (ignition switched on) without the engine running. This position is indicated by the warning lights coming on. If this is not the case, it could result in unexpected locking of the steering wheel - risk of accident!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the lock until the vehicle has come to a stop. The steering lock can engage immediately - risk of accident!
- Always withdraw the ignition key if you are going to leave the vehicle, even for a short time. This is particularly important if children are left in the vehicle. The children might otherwise start the engine or switch on electrical equipment (e.g. power windows) - risk of accident or injury! ■

Starting the engine

General

You can only start the engine only using an original ignition key.

- Place the gearshift lever into neutral and put on the handbrake firmly before starting the engine.
- The clutch pedal should be fully depressed when starting the engine - the starter then only has to crank the engine.
- Let go of the key as soon as the engine starts otherwise there may be damage to the starter.

The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine until oil pressure can be built up in the hydraulic valve clearance compensation. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.

If the engine does not start ...

You can use the battery of another vehicle as a jump-start aid => page 173.

It is only possible to tow-start vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox. The tow-starting distance must not be more than 50 metres => page 175.



WARNING

- Never run the engine in non ventilated or enclosed areas. The exhaust gases of the engine contain besides the odorless and colourless carbon monoxide a poisonous gas - hazard! Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.
- Never leave your vehicle unattended with the engine running.

Caution

- The starter may only be operated (ignition key position ③), if the engine is not running. If the starter is immediately operated after switching off the engine, the starter or the engine can be damaged.
- Avoid high engine revolutions, full throttle and high engine loads as long as the engine has not yet reached its normal operating temperature - risk of damaging the engine!
- Vehicles which are fitted with an exhaust gas catalytic converter should not be tow-started over a distance of more than 50 metres.

For the sake of the environment

Never warm up the engine when the vehicle is standing. Drive off right away. Through this the engine reaches its operating temperature more rapidly and the pollutant emissions are lower. ■

Petrol engines

These engines are fitted with a starter system which selects the correct fuel-air mixture for every external air temperature.

- Do **not depress** accelerator before and when starting engine.
- Interrupt the attempt at starting after 10 seconds if the engine does not start right away and wait for about 30 seconds before repeating the attempt.
- It is possible that the fuse on the electrical fuel pump is defect if the engine still does not start. Check the fuse and replace it if necessary ⇒ page 177.
- Contact the nearest specialist garage to obtain professional assistance.

It may be necessary, if the engine is **very hot**, to slightly depress the accelerator after the engine has started. ■

Diesel engines

Glow plug system

Diesel engines are equipped with a glow plug system, the preglow period being controlled automatically in line with the coolant temperature and outside temperature.

The preglow indicator light ⑩ comes on after the ignition has been switched on.

You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

- You should start the engine immediately after the glow plug warning light ⑩ has gone out.
- The glow plug warning light will come on for about one second if the engine is at a normal operating temperature or if the outside temperature is above +5°C. This means that you can start the engine **right away**.
- Interrupt the attempt at starting after 10 seconds if the engine does not start right away and wait for about 30 seconds before repeating the attempt.
- It is possible that the fuse on the diesel preglow system is defect if the engine still does not start. Check the fuse and replace it if necessary ⇒ page 177.
- Contact the nearest specialist garage to obtain professional assistance.

Starting the engine after the fuel tank has run dry

It may take longer than normal to start the engine after refuelling if the fuel tank has run completely dry - up to one minute. This is because the fuel system must first of all be filled while the attempting to start the engine. ■

Switching off the engine

- The engine can be switched off by turning the ignition key into position ①
⇒ page 87, fig. 100.

⚠ WARNING

- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- The brake booster only operates when the engine is running. Greater physical effort for braking is required when engine is switched off. Because if you do not stop as normal, this can cause an accident and severe injuries.

❗ Caution

you should not switch the engine off right away at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated for a lengthy period at high loads but should be allowed it to run at idling speed for about 2 minutes. This prevents any accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

i Note

- The radiator fan may continue running for a further 10 minutes or so after the engine and the ignition have been switched off. The coolant fan may, however, also switch on again after some time if the coolant temperature rises because of an accumulation of heat in the engine or if the engine is warm and the engine compartment is additionally heated by strong sunlight.
- This is why particular care is required when carrying out any work in the engine compartment ⇒ page 148, "Working in the engine compartment". ■

Shifting

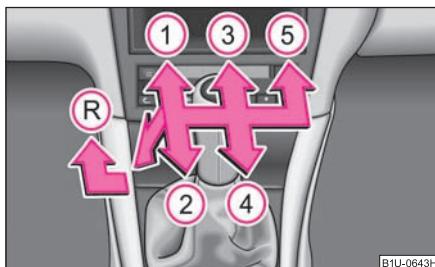


Fig. 101 Shift pattern on models fitted with 5-speed manual gearbox
B1U-0643H

Shift into reverse only when the vehicle is stationary. Depress the clutch pedal and hold it fully depressed. Wait a moment before engaging reverse gear in order to avoid any shift noises.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

⚠ WARNING

- Never engage the reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

i Note

- One should not lay the hand on the shift lever while driving the vehicle. The pressure of the hand will be transferred to the gearshift forks in the gearbox. This can, over a period of time, lead to early wear of the gearshift forks.
- Depress the clutch pedal fully when changing gears, in order to avoid unnecessary wear and damage. ■

Handbrake

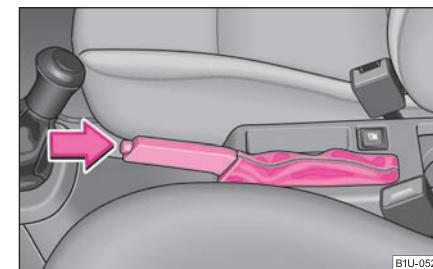


Fig. 102 Centre console: Hand-brake
B1U-0521H

Applying the handbrake

- Pull the handbrake lever up fully.



Releasing the handbrake

- Pull the handbrake lever up slightly and **at the same time** press in the locking button ⇒ page 90, fig. 102.
- Hold the button pressed and push the handbrake lever down fully ⇒ .

The handbrake warning light  lights up when the handbrake is applied, provided the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds and the following text appears in the display* if you have inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied:

HANDBRAKE ON

The handbrake warning is activated if you drive at a speed of more than 6 km/h for more than 3 seconds.

WARNING

- Please note that the handbrake must be fully released. A handbrake which is only partially released can result in the rear brakes overheating which will have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system - risk of accident! In addition this can result in premature wear of the rear brake pads.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. The children might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear. The vehicle might then move off - risk of accident!

Caution

Each time the vehicle is parked, first of all apply the handbrake and then additionally engage the 1st gear. ■

Rear parking aid*

The parking aid provides a warning of obstacles behind the vehicle.

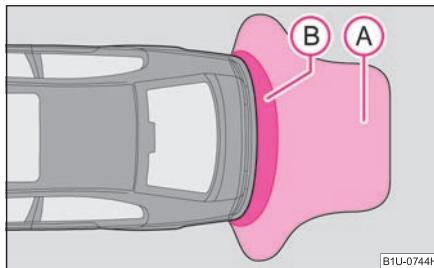


Fig. 103 Parking aid: Detection range of rear sensors

The audible parking aid determines the distance between the rear bumper and an obstacle located behind the vehicle with the aid of ultrasound sensors. The sensors are integrated in the rear bumper.

Range of sensors

The clearance warning begins at a distance of about 160 cm from the obstacle (area  ⇒ fig. 103). The interval between the warning signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced.

A **continuous tone** sounds from a distance of approx. 30 cm (area  - danger area). You should not reverse any further after this signal sounds!

Activating

The parking aid is activated automatically when **reverse gear** is engaged and the ignition is turned on. This is confirmed by a brief acknowledgement signal.

Deactivating

The parking aid is deactivated by removing the reverse gear.

⚠ WARNING

- The parking aid is not a substitute for the driver paying proper attention and it is always the driver's responsibility to take care when parking the vehicle or carrying out similar manoeuvres.
- You should therefore satisfy yourself, before reversing, that there is no small obstacle, such as a rock, thin post, trailer drawbar etc., behind your vehicle. Such an obstacle might not be within the range detected by the sensors.

i Note

- The parking aid does not operate if you are towing a trailer (applies to models which feature a factory-fitted towing device*).
- If a warning signal sounds for about 3 seconds after switching the ignition on and engaging reverse gear, and there is no obstacle close to your vehicle, this indicates a system fault. Have the fault rectified by a specialist workshop.
- The sensors must be kept clean and free of ice to enable the parking aid to operate properly. ■

Cruise control system (CCS)*

Introduction

The cruise control system (CCS) maintains a constant speed, more than 30 km/h (20 mph), once it has been set, without you having to depress the accelerator pedal. This is only possible within the range which is permitted by the power output and braking power of the engine. The cruise control system makes it possible - particularly on long journeys - for you to rest your "accelerator foot".

⚠ WARNING

- For safety reasons, the cruise control system must not be used in dense traffic or on unfavourable road surfaces (such as icy roads, slippery roads, loose gravel) - risk of accident!

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- In order to prevent unintentional use of the cruise control system, always switch off the system after use.

i Note

- Models fitted with a manual gearbox: Always depress the clutch pedal if you switch on the cruise control system when the gearbox is in Neutral! Otherwise the engine can rev up unintentionally.
- The cruise control system is not able to maintain a constant speed when driving on steep downhill sections. The weight of the vehicle increases the speed at which it travels. One should shift down in good time to a lower gear or slow the vehicle down by applying the foot brake. ■

Storing a speed



Fig. 104 Operating lever: Rocker button and switch of the cruise control system
B1U-0740H

The cruise control system is operated by means of the slide switch **(A)** and rocker button **(B)** in the left lever of the multi-functional switch.

- Switch on the cruise control system by sliding the switch **(A)** fig. 104 into the **ON** position.
- After the desired speed has been reached, briefly press the rocker button **(B)** in the **SET** position.

After releasing the rocker button (B) from the **SET** position, the speed you have stored (above 30 km/hour 20 mph) is maintained at a constant speed without having to depress the accelerator.

You can **increase** the speed by depressing the accelerator. Releasing the accelerator will cause the speed to **drop** again to the set speed.

This does not apply, however, if you drive at a speed which is more than 10 km/h higher than the set speed for a period of longer than 5 minutes. The stored speed will be cancelled in the memory. You then have to re-store the desired speed.

One can **reduce** the speed in the usual manner. The system is switched off temporarily by actuating the brake or clutch pedal ⇒ page 93.

WARNING

First ensure that it is not too high for the traffic conditions which exist at that moment before resuming the stored speed. ■

Changing a stored speed

You can also change the speed of the vehicle without depressing the accelerator.

Faster

- You can **increase** the stored speed without depressing the accelerator, by pressing the rocker button (B) ⇒ page 92, fig. 104 in the **RES** position.
- The speed of the vehicle will increase continuously if you hold the button (B) pressed in the **RES** position. Once the vehicle has reached the desired speed, release the rocker button. The set speed is then stored in the memory.

Slower

- You can **decrease** the stored speed by pressing the rocker button (B) in the **SET** position.
- Holding down the rocker button pressed in the **SET** position will cause the speed of the vehicle to reduce continuously. Once the vehicle has reached the desired speed, release the rocker button. The set speed is then stored in the memory.

- If you release the rocker button when the vehicle is travelling at a speed of less than 30 km/h, the speed is not stored, the memory is erased. It is then necessary to again store the speed with the rocker button (B) in the position **SET** after an increase in speed of the vehicle to more than 30 km/hour. ■

Switching off the cruise control system temporarily

- You can **switch off temporarily** the cruise control system, if you depress the brake or clutch pedal.
- You can likewise switch off the cruise control system by sliding the switch (A) to the right - into the **OFF** position.

The set speed remains stored in the memory.

You can **resume the stored speed** by releasing the brake pedal or clutch pedal and by briefly pressing the rocker button (B) ⇒ page 92, fig. 104 in the **RES** position.

WARNING

First ensure that it is not too high for the traffic conditions which exist at that moment before resuming the stored speed. ■

Switching off the cruise control system completely

- Move the slide switch (A) ⇒ page 92, fig. 104 into the **OFF** position. ■

Communication

Mobile phone, handsfree-system*

Universal preparation for the phone

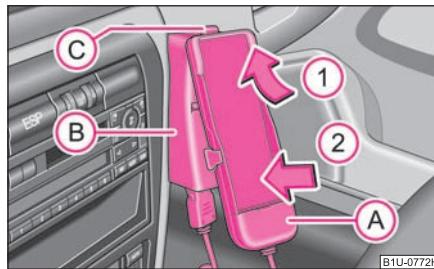


Fig. 105 Universal preparation for the phone

Only one telephone mount is factory-fitted. An adapter for the telephone can be purchased from the range of the Škoda original accessories. The mount is attached to the centre console.

Insert mobile phone

- Insert the mobile phone into the adapter **(A)** (as specified in manufacturer's instructions).

Inserting adapter with mobile phone into mount

- First insert the adapter with the mobile phone into the mount **(B)** in the direction of arrow **(1)** until the adapter is touching the stop.
- Press the adapter slightly in the direction of arrow **(2)** until it locks into position.

Initialisation

- Withdraw the ignition key.
- Insert the adapter without the mobile phone into the mount **(B)**.

- Plug the adapter cable into the mobile phone socket. The socket is located on the mobile phone mount below.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Wait approximately 20 seconds, switch off the ignition and pull the ignition key out of the ignition lock.
- Insert the mobile phone into the adapter **(A)** (as specified in manufacturer's instructions) and switch on the ignition.

Removing the mobile phone with the adapter

- Press the button **(C)** and remove the mobile telephone.

An initialisation must be carried out:

- after the first connection of the adapter;
- after reconnecting the battery;
- after pulling out the adapter cable from the power socket for the mobile phone.

This enables you to make full use of the advantages of a normal carphone ("handsfree system" using a microphone integrated in the vehicle, optimal transmission of signals using an external aerial etc.). The battery of the mobile phone is also constantly charged.

Should you have any questions, please contact a specialist garage.

Please refer to the following guidelines ⇒ page 94. ■

Mobile phones and two-way radio systems

The installation of a mobile phone and two-way radio system in a vehicle should be carried out by a specialist garage.

Škoda Auto permits the operation of mobile phones and two-way radio systems with a professionally installed external aerial and a maximum transmission power of up to 10 watts.

It is essential that you inform a specialist garage about the possibilities to assemble and operate mobile phones and two-way radio sets which have a power output of more than 10 W. They will inform you which technical possibilities exist for retrofitting mobile telephones and radio transmitters.

Operation of mobile phones or two-way radio systems may interfere with functioning of the electronic systems of your vehicle. The reasons for this may be:

- no external aerial,
- external aerial incorrectly installed,
- transmission power greater than 10 watts.

You should therefore **not operate a mobile phone or two-way radio system inside the vehicle** without the use of an external aerial, or with an external aerial which has been incorrectly installed.

You should also be aware of the fact that only an **external** aerial makes it possible to achieve the optimal range of such equipment.

WARNING

- If a mobile phone or two-way radio system is operated inside the vehicle without using an external aerial, or with an external aerial which has been incorrectly installed, the result can be excessive electromagnetic fields which may cause harm to your health.
- Please concentrate fully at all times on your driving.
- You must not install two-way radio systems, mobile phones or mounts on the covers of the airbags or within the immediate deployment range of airbags. This might result in injuries to the occupants in the event of an accident.

Note

Please also refer to the operating instructions of the mobile phones and two-way radio systems. ■

Safety

Passive Safety

Basic information

Driving the safe way

Passive safety measures reduce the risk of injury in accident situations.

In this section you will find important information, tips and notes on the subject of passive safety in your vehicle. We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, child seats and safety of children. It is therefore important, in particular, to comply with the notes and warnings in this section for your own interest and in the interest of those travelling with you.

WARNING

- This chapter contains important information on how to use the vehicle for the driver and his occupants. You will find further information on safety, which concerns you and those travelling with you, in the following chapters of this Owner's Manual.
- The complete on-board literature should always be in the vehicle. This applies in particular, if you rent out or sell the vehicle. ■

Safety equipment

The safety equipment is part of the occupant protection and it can reduce the risk of injuries in accident situations.

"Do not put at risk" your safety and the safety of those travelling with you. In the event of an accident, the safety equipment can reduce the risk of injuries. The following list contains part of the safety equipment in your vehicle:

- Three-point seat belts for all the seats*,
- belt force limiter for front seats*,
- belt tensioner for front seats*,

- seat belt height adjuster for front seats,
- front airbags*,
- side airbags*,
- anchoring points for child seat using the "ISOFIX" system,
- head restraint adjustable for height,
- adjustable steering column.

The specified safety equipment works together, in order to optimally protect you and those travelling with you in accident situations. The safety equipment does not protect you or the people travelling with you, if you or your occupants adopt an incorrect seated position or the equipment is not correctly adjusted or used.

For this reason you will be provided with information on why this equipment is very important, how it protects you and the occupants, what should be observed when using the equipment and how you and the people travelling with you can make full use of the existing safety equipment. This Owner's Manual contains important warning notes, which you and those travelling with you should pay attention to in order to reduce a risk of injury.

Safety concerns everybody! ■

Before setting off

The driver is always fully responsible for his occupants and for the operating safety of the vehicle.

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off:

- Ensure that the lighting and the turn signal system are functioning properly.
- Inspect the tyre inflation pressure.
- Ensure that all the windows offer a good visibility to the outside.
- Safely attach the items of luggage ⇒ page 63, "Loading the luggage compartment". ►

- Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedal.
- Adjust the mirror, the front seat and the head restraint to match your body size.
- Point out to your occupants that the head restraints must be adjusted to match their body size.
- Protect the children in suitable child seats with correctly fastened seat belts
⇒ page 115, "Transporting children safely".
- Adopt the correct seated position ⇒ page 98, "Correct seated position". Also inform your occupants to adopt the correct seated position.
- Fasten the seat belt correctly. Also inform your occupants to properly fasten the seat belts ⇒ page 104, "How are seat belts correctly fastened?". ■

What influences the driving safety?

The driving safety is primarily determined by the style of driving and the personal behaviour of all the occupants.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and his occupants. If your driving safety is effected, you place yourself and the oncoming traffic at risk. Please refer to the following guidelines.

- Do not get distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, e.g. by your occupants or mobile phone calls.
- Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, e.g. through medication, alcohol, drugs.
- Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
- Adjust the driving speed at all times to the road condition as well as to the traffic and weather conditions.
- Take regular breaks on long journeys - at the latest every two hours. ■

Correct seated position

Correct seated position for the driver

Correct seated position for the driver is important for safe and relaxed driving.

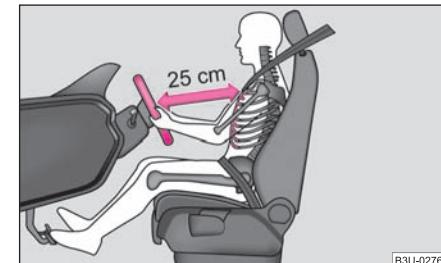


Fig. 106 The correct distance of the driver from the steering wheel

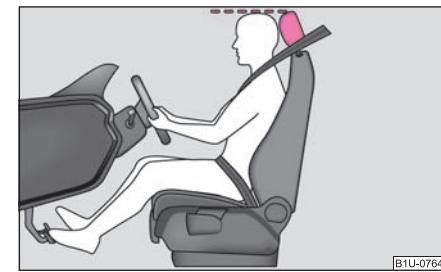


Fig. 107 The correct head restraint adjustment for the driver

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following setting:

- Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm ⇒ fig. 106.
- Position the driver seat in the forward/back direction so that you are able to fully press the pedals with your legs at a slight angle.

- Adjust the seat backrest so that you are able to reach the highest point of the steering wheel with your arms at a slight angle.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head ⇒ page 98, fig. 107.
- Fasten the seat belt correctly ⇒ page 104, "How are seat belts correctly fastened?".

Manual driver seat adjustment ⇒ page 56, "Adjusting the front seats".

Electrical driver seat adjustment ⇒ page 57, "Adjusting front seats electrically*".

WARNING

- **The front seats and the head restraints must always be adjusted to match the body size of the seat occupant as well as the seat belts must always be correctly fastened in order to provide an optimal protection for you and your occupants.**
- **The driver must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel ⇒ page 98, fig. 106. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!**
- **When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position. Never hold the steering wheel firmly in the 12 o'clock position or in another way (e.g. in the middle of the steering wheel or at the inner steering wheel edge). In such cases, injuries to the arms, the hands and the head can occur when the driver airbag is deployed.**
- **The seat backrests must not be angled too far back when driving otherwise this will affect proper operation of the seat belts and of the airbag system - risk of injury!**
- **Ensure that there are no objects in the footwell as any objects may get behind the pedals during a driving or braking manoeuvre. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, to brake or accelerate. ■**

Correct seated position for the front passenger

The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25°cm from the dash panel so that the combination of the airbag and the seat belt offers the greatest possible safety when an airbag is deployed.

For the safety of the front passenger and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following setting:

- Adjust the front passenger seat as far as possible to the rear.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head ⇒ page 98, fig. 107.
- Fasten the seat belt correctly ⇒ page 104, "How are seat belts correctly fastened?".

In exceptional cases the front passenger airbag can be deactivated ⇒ page 113, "Deactivating an airbag".

Manual front passenger adjustment ⇒ page 56, "Adjusting the front seats".

Electrical front passenger seat adjustment ⇒ page 57, "Adjusting front seats electrically*".

WARNING

- **The front seats and the head restraints must always be adjusted to match the body size of the seat occupant as well as the seat belts must always be correctly fastened in order to provide an optimal protection for you and your occupants.**
- **The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!**
- **Always keep your feet in the footwell when the vehicle is being driven - never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- The seat backrests must not be angled too far back when driving otherwise this will affect proper operation of the seat belts and of the airbag system - risk of injury! ■

Correct seated position for the occupants on the rear seats

Occupants on the rear seats must sit upright, keep the feet in the foot-well and must have their seat belts correctly fastened.

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, the occupants on the rear seats must observe the following:

- Adjust the head restraints so that the top edge of the head restraints is at the same level as the upper part of your head ⇒ page 98, fig. 107.
- Fasten the seat belt correctly ⇒ page 104, "How are seat belts correctly fastened?".
- If you are transporting ⇒ page 115, "Transporting children safely" children in the vehicle, please use a suitable child restraint system.

⚠ WARNING

- The head restraints must always be adjusted to match the body size, in order to offer an optimal protection for you and your occupants.
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven - never put your feet out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!
- If the occupants on the rear seats are not sitting upright, the risk of injury is increased due to incorrect routing of the seat belt. ■

Examples of an incorrect seated position

An incorrect seated position can lead to severe injuries or death for the occupants.

Seat belts offer their optimum protection only if the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Incorrect seated positions considerably reduce the protective functions of the seat belts and therefore increase the risk of injury due to an incorrect routing of the seat belt. The driver is fully responsible for himself and the occupants, in particular for the children. Do not permit an occupant to adopt an incorrect seated position when the car is moving.

The following list contains the examples of seated positions which are dangerous for the occupants. This list is not complete, however we would like you to get interested in this subject.

Therefore, while the car is moving never:

- stand up in the vehicle,
- stand up on the seats,
- kneel onto the seats,
- tilt the seat backrest fully to the back,
- lean against the dash panel,
- lie on the rear seats,
- only sit on the front area of the seat,
- sit to the side,
- lean out of the window,
- put the feet out of the window,
- put the feet on the dash panel,
- put the feet on the seat upholstery,
- occupy the footwell,
- have the seat belt not fastened,
- occupy the luggage compartment.



 **WARNING**

- If the occupant adopts an incorrect seated position, he is exposed to life-threatening injuries, in case he is hit by a deployed airbag.
- Before setting off, please adopt the correct seated position and do not change this seated position while the car is moving. Also advise your occupants to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this seated position while the car is moving. ■

Seat belts

Why seat belts?



Fig. 108 Driver wearing seat belt

It is a proven fact that seat belts offer good protection in accidents ⇒ fig. 108. Thus wearing a seat belt is a legal requirement in most countries.

Seat belts which have been correctly fastened and adjusted hold the occupants of the car in the correct seated position ⇒ fig. 108. The belts reduce the kinetic energy (energy of motion) to a considerable extent. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

The occupants of a vehicle who have fastened and correctly adjusted their seat belt, profit to a major extent from the fact that the kinetic energy is optimally absorbed by the belts. The structure of the front end of the vehicle and other passive safety measures, such as the airbag system, also contribute to reducing the kinetic energy. The energy produced is thus absorbed and there is less risk of injury.

Accident statistics prove that seat belts which are fastened and properly adjusted reduce the risk of an injury and enhance the chance of survival in a major accident ⇒ page 103.

It is important that you pay attention to safety measures, particularly when transporting children in the vehicle ⇒ page 115, "What you should know about transporting children!".

WARNING

- Fasten your seat belt each time before setting off, also when driving in town! This also applies to the people seated at the rear – risk of injury!
- Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child ⇒ page 104, "Fastening three-point seat belts".
- It is important for the belt webbing to be properly routed if the seat belts are to offer the maximum protection. You can see a description of how safety belts should be fitted properly on the next pages.

Note

Please comply with any differing legal requirements when using the seat belts. ■

The physical principle of a frontal collision

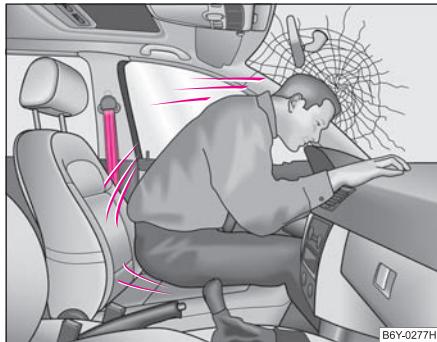


Fig. 109 The driver is catapulted forward if not wearing a belt
B6Y-0277H



Fig. 110 The rear seat occupant is catapulted forward if not wearing a belt
B6Y-0278H

The physical principle of a frontal accident can be explained quite simply:

Motion energy, so-called kinetic energy, is produced as soon as the vehicle is moving, both for the vehicle and its occupants. The magnitude of this kinetic energy depends essentially on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the vehicle and the occupants. The greater the speed and weight increase, the greater the amount of energy which has to be absorbed in the event of an accident.

The speed of the vehicle is, nevertheless, the most important factor. Doubling the speed of the vehicle from 25 km/h up to 50 km/hour increases the kinetic energy four times.

The common opinion that it is possible to support your body in a minor accident with your hands, is incorrect. Even in a collision at only a low speed, the forces acting on the body are such that it is no longer possible to support your body.

Even if you only drive at a speed within the range from 30 km/hour to 50 km/hour, the forces which are produced on your body in the event of an accident can easily exceed 10.000 N (Newton). This equals a weight of one tonne (1 000 kg).

In the event of a frontal collision, occupants of the car not wearing a seat belt, are thrown forward and strike in an uncontrolled way parts of the interior of the car, such as steering wheel, dash panel, windscreen, ⇒ fig. 109. The occupants of a vehicle who have not fastened their seat belts may even be thrown out of the vehicle. This can result in fatal injuries.

It is also important that rear seat occupants fasten their seat belts as they will otherwise be thrown through the vehicle in an uncontrolled manner in the event of an accident. A rear seat passenger who has not fastened the seat belt is a danger not only to himself but also for those seated at the front ⇒ fig. 110. ■

Important safety information regarding the use of seat belts

The correct use of the seat belts considerably reduces the risk of injury!



WARNING

- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.
- It is important that the belt webbing is properly routed if the seat belts are to offer their maximum protection ⇒ page 104, "How are seat belts correctly fastened?" .
- No two persons (also not children) should ever use a single seat belt together.
- The maximum protection which seat belts can offer is only achieved if you are correctly seated ⇒ page 98, "Correct seated position".

 **WARNING (continued)**

- The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. spectacles, ball-point pens, keys etc.) as this may be a cause of injuries.
- Bulky, loose clothing (e.g. a winter coat over a jacket) does not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- It is prohibited to use clamps or other objects to adjust seat belts (e.g. for shortening the belts for smaller persons).
- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.
- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belt webbing may impair proper operation of the inertia reel ⇒ page 143, "Seat belts".
- The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked by paper or similar objects otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.
- Inspect the seat belts regularly to ensure they are in good condition. If you find seat belts which have damage to the seat belt webbing, seat belt connections, to the inertia reels or to the lock, the relevant safety belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not make an attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.
- Damaged seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident and were therefore stretched, must be replaced – this is best done by a specialist garage. The anchorage points of the belts must also be inspected. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.
- In certain countries it is possible to use seat belts which differ in terms of their operation from the seat belts which are described on the pages which follow. ■

How are seat belts correctly fastened?

Fastening three-point seat belts

Fasten your seat belt before starting!



Fig. 111 Routing of webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt

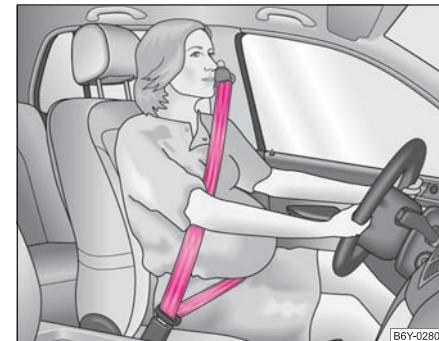


Fig. 112 Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother

- Correctly adjust the front seat and the head restraint before fastening your seat belt ⇒ page 56.



- Slowly pull the belt webbing at the tongue of the lock over your chest and pelvis
⇒ 
- Insert the tongue of the lock into the seat belt buckle belonging to the seat until it is heard to lock in place.
- Pull on the belt to check that it has also reliably engaged in the lock.

Each three-point seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel. This inertia reel offers you complete freedom of movement if the belt is unreeled slowly. If the brakes are applied suddenly, the inertia reel will block. It also blocks the belts when the car accelerates, when driving uphill and when cornering.

Expectant mothers must also wear the seat belt ⇒ 

WARNING

- **The shoulder part of the seat belt must never run across your neck but must run approximately over the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. The lap part of the belt must run across the hip and must never be routed across the stomach. It must always fit snugly ⇒ page 104, fig. 111. Adjust the belt webbing as required.**
- **The lap part of the belt should be positioned as low as possible at the pelvis of an expectant mother in order to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen.**
- **Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.**
- **A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.**
- **Only insert the lock tongue into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. This will affect the protection which the belt offers and increase the risk of an injury. ■**

Seat belt height adjuster

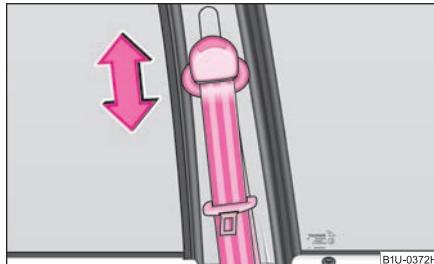


Fig. 113 Front seat: Seat belt height adjuster

The seat belt height adjuster makes it possible for you to adapt the routing of the three-point seat belt in the area of the shoulder to match your body size.

- In order to adjust the height, press on the upper seat belt deflection and push it into the desired direction up or down so that the shoulder part of the belt is positioned approximately across the middle of your shoulder ⇒ page 104, fig. 111.
- Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

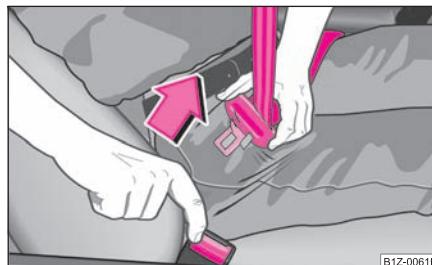
WARNING

Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is positioned approximately across the middle of your shoulder – on no account across your neck.

Note

It is also possible to adapt the routing of the belt webbing at the front seats by adjusting the height of the seat. ■

Taking seat belts off



B1Z-0061H

Fig. 114 Releasing lock tongue from belt lock

- Press the red button in the belt lock **⇒ fig. 114**. The spring force causes the tongue of the lock to jump out.
- Guide the belt back with your hand to enable the inertia reel to wind up the belt webbing more easily.

A plastic knob in the belt webbing holds the belt tongue in a position which is easy to get hold of. ■

Three-point seat belt with the Interlock System*

A three-point safety belt with the Interlock System is used on some vehicles instead of a pelvic belt.

If the backrest of the rear seats is not secured, the retractor blocks and the seat belt cannot be reeled down. ■

Rear middle three-point safety belt with safety lock for a child seat*

In order to attach a child seat the rear middle three-point safety belt with the blocking, the so-called child safety locks, can be used.

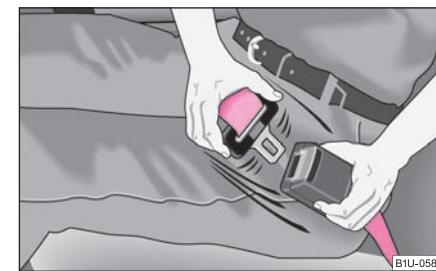
Switching child safety lock on

- Attach the child safety seat with the three-point seat belt (self-retracting) as stated in the manufacturer's instructions.
- Reel up the shoulder part of the belt completely. When the belt is reeled up, this can be detected by a "clicking" noise.
- After fixing the child seat in place, let the belt freely reel up. Now the belt can no longer be reeled down.
- Check if the safety lock is activated by pulling on the belt.

Switching child safety lock off

- By pressing the button in the lock of the safety belt, the blocking is unblocked and afterwards the safety belt starts to reel up.
- After fully reeling up the belt, you can freely reel it down again. ■

The pelvic belt*



B1U-0589H

Fig. 115 Fasten pelvic belt



Fig. 116 Extending the pelvic belt

The rear middle seat is fitted with a pelvic belt. The lock part of the two-point pelvic belt is operated in the same way as for a three-point safety belt. An unused pelvic belt should be stowed away together with the lock for safety reasons.

Extending the pelvic belt

- Hold the lock tongue at right angles to the belt webbing and pull through the desired amount of belt webbing \Rightarrow fig. 116.

Shortening the pelvic belt

- Pull on the free end of the belt.
- Fix the excess belt length by threading it through the plastic slider.

The adjustment of the belt length is facilitated by simultaneously pressing the belt tongue and the belt cover lengthwise.

⚠ WARNING

The pelvic belt must always sit firmly across the pelvis; tighten the belt webbing if necessary. ■

Belt tensioners

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front three-point seat belts, in addition to the protection afforded by the airbag system.

The three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal collision of a certain severity. The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.

The belt tensioner is deployed in the event of a frontal collision of major severity. A powder charge is ignited in the inertia reels during deployment. The belt webbing is pulled into the inertia reels by a mechanical system and the belt is tensioned.

Belt tensioners are not activated in the event of minor frontal collisions, side and rear-end collisions, in the case of a rollover and also not in accidents in which no major forces are produced from the front.

⚠ WARNING

- Any work on the system including removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- The protective function of the system is only adequate for a single accident. If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.
- The Owner's Manual must also be handed over to the new owner if the vehicle is sold.

ℹ Note

- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.
- It is essential to pay attention to relevant safety regulations if the vehicle or individual parts of the system are scrapped. Specialist garages are familiar with these regulations and will be able to provide you with detailed information in this respect.
- When disposing of vehicle or parts of the system, it is important to comply with the national legal requirements. ■

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

General information on the airbag system

The front airbag system is complementary to the three-point seat belts and offers additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and passenger in the event of a frontal collision.

In the case of a violent side crash, the side airbags* reduce the risk of injuries to the occupants on the side of the collision ⇒ .

The airbag system is only functional after the ignition has been switched on.

The operational readiness of the airbag system is monitored electronically. The airbag indicator light comes on for a few seconds each time the ignition is switched on.

The airbag system (according to vehicle equipment) consists of:

- an electronic control unit,
- front airbag for the driver and the front seat passenger*,
- side airbags*,
- an airbag indicator light in the instrument cluster,
- Switch for front passenger airbag* in front passenger storage compartment ⇒ page 113,
- Indicator light for a switched off front seat passenger airbag* ⇒ page 113.

A fault in the airbag system exists if:

- the airbag indicator light does not light up when the ignition is switched on,
- the warning light does not go out after about 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on,
- the airbag indicator light goes out and comes on again after the ignition is switched on,
- the airbag indicator light comes on or flickers when driving.

WARNING

- To enable the occupants of a vehicle to be protected with the greatest possible effect when the airbag is deployed, the front seats must be ⇒ page 98, "Correct seated position" correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- If you do not fasten the seat belts when driving, lean too far forward or adopt an incorrect seated position, you are exposing yourself to increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.
- Have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage if a fault exists. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind may be made to parts of the airbag system.
- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- The protective function of the airbag system is sufficient for only one accident. The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed.
- The airbag system needs no maintenance during its working life.
- If you sell your car, please hand over the complete vehicle documentation to the new owner. Please note that the documents relating to the possibility of deactivating the front passenger airbag are also part of the vehicle documents!
- If the vehicle or individual parts of the airbag system are scrapped, it is essential to observe the relevant safety precautions. Specialist garages are familiar with these regulations.
- When disposing of vehicle or parts of the airbag system, it is important to comply with the national legal requirements. ■

When are the airbags deployed?

The airbag system is designed in such a way that the driver and the front passenger airbag* are deployed in the event of a **frontal collision of major severity**.



In the case of a **violent side crash**, the side airbag* is deployed on the side of the vehicle on which the collision occurs.

In certain accident situations, the front as well as the side airbags are deployed at the same time.

The airbags **are not deployed** in the case of **minor** frontal and side collisions, in the case of rear-end collisions and vehicle rollover.

Deployment factors

It is not possible to state globally which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation as the circumstances which exist in the case of accidents vary greatly. An important role in this case, for example, is played by factors such as the type of object against which the vehicle impacts (hard, soft), the angle of impact, the vehicle speed etc.

A decisive factor for the deployment of the airbags is the deceleration which occurs during a collision. The control unit analyses the nature of the collision and activates the relevant restraint system. If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The airbags are not deployed if:

- ignition is switched off;
- a minor frontal collision;
- a minor side collision;
- a rear-end collision;
- Rollover of the vehicle.

Note

- A grey white, non harmful gas is released when airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.
- The dash panel must be replaced after the front passenger airbag has been deployed.
- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed:

- the interior lighting comes on (if the switch for the interior light is in the door contact position);
- the hazard warning light is switched on;
- All the doors are unlocked. ■

Front airbags

Description of the front airbags

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belt!



Fig. 117 Driver airbag in the steering wheel

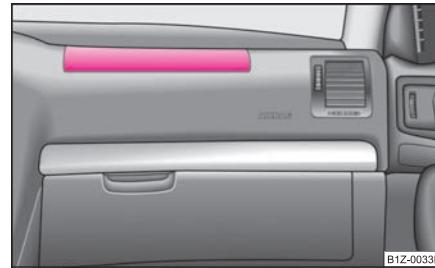


Fig. 118 Front passenger airbag in the dash panel

The front airbag for the driver is housed in the steering wheel [fig. 117](#). The front airbag for the front passenger* is housed in the dash panel above the storage

compartment ⇒ fig. 118. The installation positions are each marked with the "AIRBAG" logo.

The front airbag system, in combination with three-point safety belts, offers additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and front passenger in the event of a frontal collision of major severity ⇒ ▲ in "Important safety information regarding the front airbag system" on page 110.

The airbag is not a substitute for the seat belt, but is part of the complete passive vehicle safety concept. **Please note that an airbag can only offer you optimal protection in combination with a seat belt which is fastened.**

Apart from their normal protective function, a further task of the **seat belts** is to also hold the driver and front passenger in a correct seated position in the event of a frontal collision so as to enable the front airbags to offer the maximum protection.

You should therefore always fasten the seat belts, not only because this is required by law, but also for safety reasons and for your own protection ⇒ page 102, "Why seat belts?".

Note

The dash panel must be replaced after the front passenger airbag has been deployed. ■

Function of the front airbags

Risk of injury to the head and chest area is reduced by fully inflated airbags.

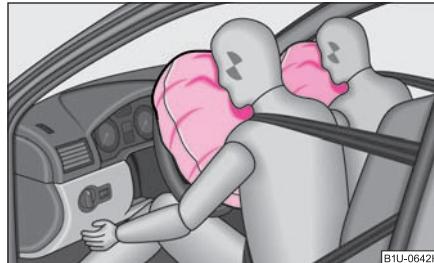


Fig. 119 Inflated airbags

The airbag system is designed in such a way that the driver and the front passenger airbag* are deployed in the event of a frontal collision of major severity.

In certain accident situations, the front and side airbags may be deployed together.

If the airbags are deployed, the airbags are filled with a propellant gas and inflated in front of the driver and front passenger ⇒ fig. 119. The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high speed in order to be able to offer that additional protection in the event of an accident. The forward movement of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

The specially developed airbag allows the gas to flow out of the inflated airbag in a controlled manner (depending on the load of the particular car occupant) in order to cushion head and chest areas. The airbag then deflates subsequently to such an extent, after an accident, to again provide a clear view forward.

A grey white, non harmful gas is released when airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

The airbag develops enormous forces when triggered, which can lead to injuries if the sitting position or seated position is not correct ⇒ ▲ in "Important safety information regarding the front airbag system". ■

Important safety information regarding the front airbag system

Correct use of the airbag system considerably reduces the risk of injury!

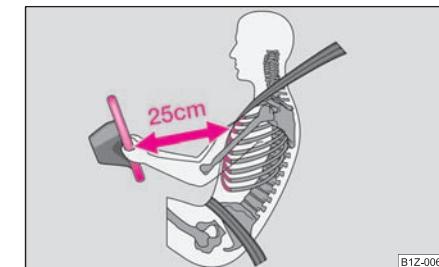


Fig. 120 Safe distance to steering wheel

WARNING

- Never transport children on the front seat of a vehicle without using a proper restraint system. If airbags are deployed in the event of an accident, the child might suffer severe or even fatal injuries!
- For the driver and front passenger it is important to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel or dash panel ⇒ page 110, fig. 120. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- It is essential to always switch off the front passenger airbag and/or side airbag when attaching a child safety seat on the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel (in some countries also when the child is facing the direction of travel) ⇒ page 113, "Deactivating an airbag". If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. In certain countries national legal provisions also require that the side passenger airbags be deactivated. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.
- There must not by any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the front seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag.
- The steering wheel and the surface of the airbag module in the dash panel on the passenger side must not be stuck onto, covered or modified in any other way. These parts should only be cleaned with a dry cloth or a cloth moistened with water. No objects such as cup holders, mobile phone mounts, etc. may be attached to the covers of the airbag modules or be located within the immediate area.
- No modifications of any kind may be made to parts of the airbag system. Any work on the airbag system including installing and removing system components because of other repair work (e.g. removing the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never carry out changes on the front bumper or on the body.
- Never place any objects on the surface of the front passenger airbag module in the dash panel. ■

Side airbags*

Description of side airbags

The side airbag increases protection of the passenger concerned in the case of a side impact.



Fig. 121 Installation position of side airbag in driver seat

The side airbags are housed in the upholstery of the seat backrests of the front seats.

The side airbag system in combination with the three-point seat belts, offers additional protection for the upper area of the body (chest, stomach and pelvis) of the occupants of the vehicle in the event of severe side collisions ⇒  in "Important safety information on the side airbag" on page 112.

Apart from their normal protective function, a further task of the **seat belts** is to also hold the driver and front passenger in a correct seated position in the event of a side collision so as to enable the side airbags to offer the maximum protection.

You should therefore always fasten the seat belts, not only because this is required by law, but also for safety reasons and for your own protection ⇒ page 102, "Why seat belts?". ■

Function of the side airbags

Risk of injury to the upper part of the body is reduced by fully inflated side airbags.



Fig. 122 Inflated side airbag

In the case of a **violent side crash**, the side airbag in the front seat is deployed on the side of the vehicle on which the collision occurs ⇒ fig. 122.

In certain accident situations, the front and side airbags may be deployed together.

If an airbag is deployed, the airbag is filled with gas. The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high speed in order to be able to offer that additional protection in the event of an accident.

A grey white, non harmful gas is released when airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunging into the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door. ■

Important safety information on the side airbag

Correct use of the airbag system considerably reduces the risk of injury!

WARNING

- It is essential to always switch off the front passenger airbag and/or side airbag when attaching a child safety seat on the front passenger seat where the

WARNING (continued)

child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel (in some countries also when the child is facing the direction of travel) ⇒ page 113, "Deactivating an airbag". If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. In certain countries national legal provisions also require that the side passenger airbags be deactivated. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.

- Your head should never be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag. You might suffer severe injuries in the event of an accident. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat ⇒ page 117, "Child safety and side airbag*".
- If children adopt an incorrect seated position when travelling, they may be exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injuries ⇒ page 115, "What you should know about transporting children!".
- There must not be any further persons, animals as well as objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. No accessories, such as a can holder, should be attached to the doors.
- Only hang light items of clothing on the clothes hooks to the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Ensure that there are no excessive forces, such as violent knocks, kicks etc., impact on the backrests of the seats otherwise the system may be damaged. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of the type expressly authorised by Škoda Auto. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Any damage to the original seat covers in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired without delay by your specialist garage.
- The airbag modules in the front seats must not display any damage, cracks or deep scratches. It is not permissible to use force in order to open the modules.

WARNING (continued)

- Any work on the side airbag system including removing and installing system components because of other repair work (e.g. removing seats) must only be carried out by a specialist garage. ■

Deactivating an airbag

Deactivating airbags

If any airbags have been deactivated, switch them on again as soon as possible so that they are able to again provide their proper protection.

There is the technical means installed within your vehicle to switch off the front or side* airbag using a diagnostic equipment (take out of commission).

This is why you should have the deactivation of the airbags carried out by a specialist garage.

On vehicles equipped with the switch for deactivation of the airbags, you can deactivate the front passenger airbag and/or side airbag by means of this switch ⇒ page 113.

Deactivation of airbags is envisaged only for particular instances, such as if:

- You must in **exceptional cases** use a child seat on the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back to the direction of travel (in some countries this must be in the direction of travel due to other legal regulations applying) ⇒ page 115, "Important safety information regarding the use of child safety seats";
- you are not able to maintain the distance of at least 25 cm between middle of steering wheel and chest, despite the driver seat being correctly adjusted;
- special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability;
- you have installed other seats (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

Monitoring the airbag system

The functionality of the airbag system is also monitored electronically when one airbag has been switched off.

If the airbag was switched off using diagnostic equipment:

- The airbag indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up for about 3 seconds after switching on the ignition and then flashes after that for about 12 seconds.

The following situation applies if the airbag has been switched off using the switch for the airbag* in the storage compartment:

- the airbag indicator light in the instrument cluster comes on for about 4 seconds each time the ignition is switched on;
- The deactivation of the airbag is indicated by the lighting up of the indicator light **AIRBAG OFF** at the front interior lighting of the vehicle ⇒ page 113.

Note

A specialist garage will be able to advise you whether national legislation in your country allows airbags in your vehicle to be deactivated, and which ones. ■

Switch for the front passenger airbag(s)*



Fig. 123 Storage compartment:
Switch for the front passenger
airbag(s)



Fig. 124 Indicator light for a switched off front seat passenger airbag

The front passenger airbag as well as side airbag (if the vehicle is fitted with side airbags) are switched off using the switch.

Deactivating an airbag

- Switch off the ignition.
- Turn the slot of the airbag switch using the key in the position **OFF** ⇒ [page 113, fig. 123](#) - (vertical position).
- Check whether the indicator light **AIRBAG OFF** lights up in the lighting of the interior of the vehicle (front) when the ignition is switched on ⇒ [page 114, fig. 124](#).

Switching on an airbag

- Switch off the ignition.
- Turn the slot of the airbag switch using the key in the position **ON** ⇒ [page 113, fig. 123](#) - (horizontal position).
- Check whether the indicator light **AIRBAG OFF** does not light up in the lighting of the interior of the vehicle (front) when the ignition is switched on ⇒ [page 114, fig. 124](#).

The airbag should only be switched off under exceptional circumstances ⇒ [page 113](#).

Indicator light **AIRBAG OFF** (airbag switched off)

The indicator light is located at the front interior lighting of the vehicle ⇒ [page 114, fig. 124](#).

In cases where the front passenger airbag and also possibly the side airbag* are **switched off**, the indicator light comes on about 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on.

There is a system fault present in the airbag switch off ⇒  if the indicator light flashes. **Please have the car inspected immediately by a specialist garage.**

WARNING

- **The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.**
- **Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off!** Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for the airbag deactivation.
- **If the warning light **AIRBAG OFF** (airbag switched off) flashes:**
 - There is a risk of the front passenger airbag not being activated in the event of an accident. Therefore do not use any child safety seats on the front passenger seat.
 - If the front passenger seat is occupied, there is a risk that the airbag is deployed unexpectedly and thus the occupant of this seat may suffer possible injuries.
 - It is also important to have the system inspected without delay by a specialist garage. ■

Transporting children safely

What you should know about transporting children!

An introduction to the subject

Accident statistics have revealed that children are generally more safely transported on the rear seats than on the front passenger seat.

Children younger than 12 years of age should normally travel on the rear seat of the vehicle (take note of any national legal provisions which differ from this). They should be secured there by means of a child restraint system or by using the existing seat belts depending on their age, body size and weight. The child seat should be mounted behind the front passenger seat for safety reasons.

The physical principle of an accident does, of course, also apply to children
⇒ page 103, "The physical principle of a frontal collision". They differ from adults in that their muscles and bone structure of children are not yet fully developed. Thus children are exposed to increased risk of injury.

Children should be transported by using special child safety seats in order to reduce this risk of injury.

Use only child safety seats which are officially approved and are suitable for children and which comply with the ECE-R 44 standard, which classifies child safety seats into 5 groups ⇒ page 118, "Classification of child seats into groups". Child restraint systems which have been tested for conformity to ECE-R 44 standard have a non-detachable test seal (a large E within a circle and below this the test number) attached to the seat.

We recommend that you use child safety seats from the Škoda genuine accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in Škoda vehicles. They fulfil the ECE-R 44 standard.

Note

Any varying national legal regulations take priority over the information provided in these instructions for use, or stated in this chapter. ■

Important safety information regarding the use of child safety seats

Correct use of child safety seats considerably reduces the risk of injury!

WARNING

- All the occupants of the car – in particular children – must wear a seat belt when the car is moving.
- Children less than 1.50 m in height or younger than 12 years must not use a normal seat belt without a child restraint system otherwise this may result in injuries to the stomach and neck areas. Comply with the national legal requirements.
- One should never carry children, and also not babies! – on one's lap.
- You can transport a child safely in a suitable child safety seat ⇒ page 118, "Child seat"!
- Only one child may be fastened with a seat belt into a child safety seat.
- Never leave the child sitting unattended in the seat.
- Certain outside climatic conditions can cause life-threatening temperatures in the vehicle.
- Never allow your child to be transported in a vehicle without the use of a suitable restraint system.
- Children should also never stand up in a vehicle or kneel on the seats when the vehicle is moving. In the event of an accident the child will be thrown through the vehicle and may as a result suffer fatal injuries, and also injure other occupants.
- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front



WARNING

Always comply with legal provisions and instructions from the relevant child safety seat manufacturer when installing and using the child seat ⇒  in "Important safety information regarding the use of child safety seats".

WARNING (continued)

passenger seat if the airbag system deploys in the event of an accident. This can result in severe or even fatal injuries.

- It is important that the belt webbing is properly routed if the seat belts are to offer their maximum protection ⇒ page 104, "How are seat belts correctly fastened?". Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- It is essential to always switch off the front passenger airbag and possibly the side airbag* when attaching a child safety seat on the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel (in some countries also when the child is facing the direction of travel) ⇒ page 113. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. In certain countries national legal provisions also require that the side airbags be deactivated. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats. ■

Use of child safety seats on the front passenger seat

Child safety seats should always be attached to the rear seats.

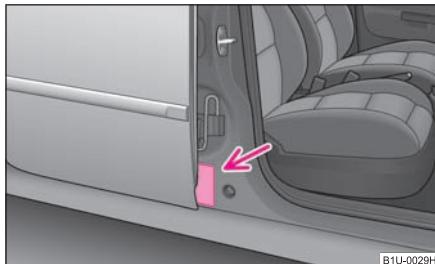


Fig. 125 Sticker on the centre column of the body on the front passenger side.
B1U-0029H

We recommend, for safety reasons, that you always mount a child restraint systems on the rear seats whenever possible. If you still decide, however, to use a child safety seat on the front passenger seat then you must pay attention to the following warnings in connection with the use of the airbag system on the front passenger seat.

WARNING

- Warning – particular hazard!** Never use a child safety seat on the front passenger seat in which the child is seated with its back facing the direction of travel. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.
- This is also clearly stated on the sticker which is located on the centre column of the body on the front passenger side ⇒ fig. 125. The sticker is visible upon opening the front passenger door. For some countries, the sticker is also affixed to the sun visor of the front passenger.
- It is essential to always switch off the front passenger airbag or the side passenger airbag* as well if you nevertheless wish to use a child safety seat on the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel (in some countries also when the child is facing the direction of travel) ⇒ page 113, "Deactivating an airbag". If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. In certain countries national legal provisions also require that the side airbags be deactivated. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.
- If the front passenger airbag has been switched off by a specialist garage using the vehicle system tester, the side passenger airbag* remains switched on. In certain countries national legal provisions require that besides the front passenger airbag also the side airbag is deactivated. Please comply with any differing national legal regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.
- If a child safety seat in which the child faces in the direction of travel is used on the front passenger seat, the front passenger seat must be moved back fully. For vehicles with height adjustable front passenger seat, the seat must be put in the highest position.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- If this is not done, a child seated on the front passenger seat may suffer severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag or airbags are deployed. Have the airbag (or airbags) deactivated if necessary ⇒ page 113.
- You should have the front passenger airbag (or airbags) reactivated just as soon as you no longer use a child safety seat on the front passenger seat. ■

Child safety and side airbag*

Children must never be seated in the deployment area of side airbags.



Fig. 126 Seated position of an unprotected child at risk from side airbag
B1Z-0112H



Fig. 127 Child properly protected by safety seat
B1Z-0113H

The side airbags are inflated in fractions of a second in order to be able to provide this protection ⇒ page 112, "Function of the side airbags".

An airbag inflating develops such a strong force that an occupant who has not adopted an upright seated position may suffer injuries from the airbag or as a result of objects which are located within the deployment area of the side airbag.

This applies particularly to children if they are not transported in accordance with legal requirements.

The child is protected when seated in a child safety seat matching its age. Adequate room is available between the child and the deployment area of the side airbag and head airbag. The airbag offers optimal protection.

⚠ WARNING

- It is essential to always switch off the front passenger airbag and possibly the side airbag* when attaching a child safety seat on the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel (in some countries also when the child is facing the direction of travel) ⇒ page 113. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. In certain countries national legal provisions also require that the side airbags be deactivated. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.
- When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.
- Children must never be seated with their head in the deployment area of the side airbag – risk of injury!
- Do not place any objects within the deployment area of the side airbag – risk of injury! ■

In the event of a side collision, the side airbags offer the vehicle occupants enhanced protection.

Child seat

Classification of child seats into groups

Only child safety seats which have an official approval and are suitable for the child, may be used.

ECE-R 44 standard applies to child safety seats. ECE-R means: Standard Economic Commission of Europe - Regulation.

Child safety seats which have been tested for conformity to ECE-R 44 standard have a non-detachable test seal (a large E within a circle and below this the test number) attached to the seat.

Child safety seats are classified in 5 groups:

Group	Weight	
0	0 - 10 kg	⇒ page 118
0+	up to 13 kg	⇒ page 118
1	9 - 18 kg	⇒ page 119
2	15 - 25 kg	⇒ page 120
3	22 - 36 kg	⇒ page 120

Children of more than 150 cm in height may use the seat belts fitted to the vehicle without a seat bolster. ■

Use of child safety seats

An overview of the usefulness of child seats on each of the seats according to the EG guidelines 77/541 and ECE 44 standard:

Child seat of the group	Front passenger seat	Rear seat outside	Rear seat middle
0	U +	U +	U
0+	U +	U +	U
1	U +	U +	U
2 and 3	U	U	U

(U) Universal category - seat is suitable for all approved types of child safety seats.

(+) The seat can be fitted with fixing eyes for the "ISOFIX*" system. ■

Child seats of group 0/0+

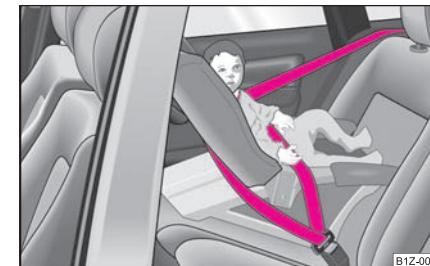


Fig. 128 Child seats of group 0/0+

The optimal solution for babies of up to about 9 months old weighing up to 10 kg or babies up to about 18 months old weighing up to 13 kg is a child safety seat which can be adjusted into the reclining position ⇒ fig. 128.

In view of the fact that such child seats are installed that the child is seated with its back facing the direction of travel, they must not be used on the front passenger seat ⇒ page 116, "Use of child safety seats on the front passenger seat".



WARNING

- It is essential to always switch off the front passenger airbag (airbags) when attaching in exceptional circumstances a child safety seat on the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel (in some countries also when the child is facing the direction of travel).
 - in a specialist garage
 - or by using the switch for the front passenger airbag* ⇒ page 113.
- In certain countries national legal provisions require that besides the front passenger airbag also the front passenger side airbag is deactivated. Please comply with any differing national legal regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.
- If this is not done, a child seated on the front passenger seat may suffer severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag or airbags are deployed.
- You should have the front passenger airbag (or airbags) reactivated just as soon as you no longer use a child safety seat on the front passenger seat. ■

Child safety seats in Group 1



Fig. 129 Child seat with padded table in Group 1 installed on rear seat bench facing the direction of travel

Child seats in Group 1 are for babies and small children up to 4 years of age with a weight of between 9 and 18 kilograms. It is best for children in the lower range of this group, to use a child seat which allows the child to sit with its back to the direction of

travel. It is best for children in the upper range of the Group 0+, to use a child seat which allows the child to sit ⇒ fig. 129 in the direction of travel.

Child safety seats in which the child is seated with its back facing the direction of travel, must not be used on the front passenger seat ⇒ page 116, "Use of child safety seats on the front passenger seat".

WARNING

- It is essential to always switch off the front passenger airbag (airbags) when attaching in exceptional circumstances a child safety seat on the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel (in some countries also when the child is facing the direction of travel).
 - in a specialist garage
 - or by using the switch for the front passenger airbag* ⇒ page 113.
- In certain countries national legal provisions require that besides the front passenger airbag also the front passenger side airbag is deactivated. Please comply with any differing national legal regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.
- If this is not done, a child seated on the front passenger seat may suffer severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag or airbags are deployed.
- You should have the front passenger airbag (or airbags) reactivated just as soon as you no longer use a child safety seat on the front passenger seat. ■

Child safety seats in Group 2



Fig. 130 Child seat in Group 2 installed on the rear seat facing the direction of travel

B1Z-0115H

For children up to about 7 years of age weighing between 15 and 25 kg the optimal solution is a child safety seat in combination with the three-point seat belt ⇒ fig. 130.



WARNING

- When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats. If required, the airbag has to be deactivated,
 - in a specialist garage
 - or by using the switch for the front passenger airbag* ⇒ page 113.
- The shoulder part of the seat belt must run approximately across the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. It must on no account run across the neck. The lap part of the seat belt must run across the pelvis and fits snugly; it must not run over the belly. Tighten the belt webbing over your hip if necessary.
- Please comply with any differing national legal regulations regarding the use of child safety seats. ■

Child safety seats in Group 3



Fig. 131 Child seat in Group 3 installed on the rear seat facing the direction of travel

B1Z-0116H

For children of about 7 years of age weighing between 22 and 36 kg and of a height of less than 150 cm, the optimal solution is a child safety seat (seat bolster) in combination with the three-point seat belt ⇒ fig. 131.

Children of more than 150 cm in height may use the seat belts fitted to the vehicle without a seat bolster.



WARNING

- When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats. If required, the airbag has to be deactivated,
 - in a specialist garage
 - or by using the switch for the front passenger airbag* ⇒ page 113.
- The shoulder part of the seat belt must run approximately across the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. It must on no account run across the neck. The lap part of the seat belt must run across the pelvis and fits snugly; it must not run over the belly. Tighten the belt webbing over your hip if necessary.
- Please comply with any differing national legal regulations regarding the use of child safety seats. ■

Attaching a child seat using the "ISOFIX" system

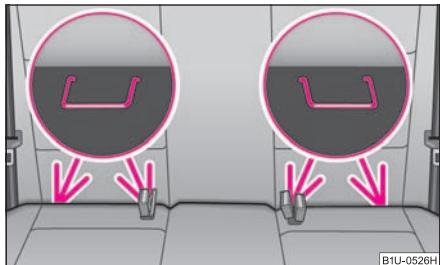


Fig. 132 Locking eyes (ISOFIX system)

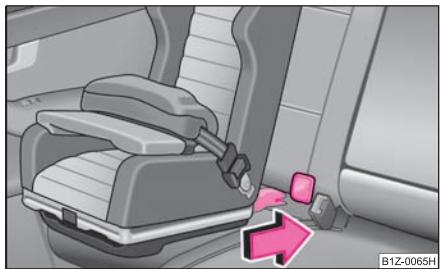


Fig. 133 The ISOFIX child seat is pushed into the mounting funnels

There are two locking eyes between the rear exterior seat backrest and the surface of the seat itself on both sides for fixing the **ISOFIX** system child seat in place. One can mount a child safety seat using the **ISOFIX** system quickly, easily and reliably. The installation must be carried out according to the supplied instructions. The seat must click into place audibly when installing.

Install child seat

- Insert the mounting funnels onto the locking eyes between the seat backrest and the seat cushion ⇒ fig. 132.
- Push the notched arms of the child seat into the locking eyes until they are heard to lock in place ⇒ fig. 133.

- Pull on both sides of the child seat!

One can mount a child safety seat using the "ISOFIX" system quickly, easily and reliably. Please pay close attention to instructions from the manufacturer of the child safety seat when installing and removing the seat.

Child seats fitted with the "ISOFIX" system can only be mounted and fixed in a vehicle fitted with an "ISOFIX" system when these child seats have been released for this type of vehicle according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

You can obtain child seats with the "ISOFIX" attachment system from specialist garages who will also install it as well.

Complete installation instructions are enclosed with the child safety seat.

WARNING

- The locking eyes have just been developed for child safety seats which use the "ISOFIX" system. You should therefore never attach other child safety seats, seat belts or objects to the locking eyes - hazard!
- Ask a specialist garage whether a child seat which you bought for another vehicle is recommended for use in your vehicle before using a child seat with "ISOFIX" system.
- Certain child seats which use the "ISOFIX" system can be attached with standard three-point seat belts. Please pay close attention to instructions from the manufacturer of the child safety seat when installing and removing the seat.

Note

- Child seats which use the "ISOFIX" system are currently available for children weighing from 9 up to 18 kg. This corresponds to an age range of from 9 months to 4 years. ■

Driving Tips

Intelligent Technology

Electronic stability programme (ESP)*

General



Fig. 134 ESP switch

General

The ESP aids you in maintaining control of your vehicle in situations in which the vehicle is driving at its dynamic limits, such as entering a curve fast. The risk of skidding is reduced and your vehicle thus offers greater driving stability depending on the conditions of the road surface. The system operates at all speeds.

The following systems are integrated into the electronic stability programme:

- Electronic Differential Lock (EDL),
- Traction control system (TCS),
- Antilock brake system (ABS),
- Brake Assist.

Operating principle

The ESP switches on automatically when the engine is started and then conducts a self-test. The ESP control unit processes data from the individual systems. It also processes

additional measurement data which are supplied by highly sensitive sensors: the rotational velocity of the vehicle about its vertical axis, the lateral acceleration of the vehicle, the braking pressure and the steering angle.

The direction which the driver wishes to take is determined based on the steering angle and the speed of the vehicle and is constantly compared with the actual behaviour of the vehicle. If differences exist, such as the vehicle beginning to skid, the ESP will automatically brake the appropriate wheel.

The car is stabilised again by the forces which take effect when the wheel is braked. Intervention into the brake system takes place primarily on the outer front wheel of a vehicle which tends to oversteer (tendency for the rear of the vehicle to break away) while occurs this is on the inner rear wheel of a vehicle which tends to understeer (tendency to shift out of the curve). This braking control cycle is accompanied by noises.

The ESP operates in combination with the ABS ⇒ page 126, "Antilock brake system (ABS)*". If there is a fault in the ABS system, the ESP also does not operate.

The ESP warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when there is a fault on the ESP ⇒ page 31.

Switching off

You can switch the ESP off and on again as you wish, by pressing the button ⇒ fig. 134. The ESP warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the system is switched off ⇒ page 31.

The ESP should normally always be switched on. It may be good practice in certain exceptional cases, such as when you wish to have wheel slip, to switch off the system.

Examples:

- when driving with snow chains
- when driving in deep snow or on a loose surface
- when it is necessary to rock a vehicle when it has become stuck.

then you should switch on the ESP again.

WARNING

It is also not possible for the ESP to overcome the physical limits of the vehicle. Even if a vehicle fitted with ESP you should still always adapt your style of driving to the condition of the road surface and the traffic situation. This particularly applies when driving on slippery and wet roads. The increased safety offered must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise – risk of an accident!

Note

- All four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres in order to achieve problem-free operation of the ESP. Differing rolling circumferences of the tyres can lead to an undesirable reduction in the engine output.
- Changes to vehicle (e.g. on engine, on the brakes, on chassis or another combination of tyres and wheels) can influence the function of the ESP ⇒ page 166, "Accessories, changes and replacement of parts". ■

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)*

The electronic differential lock prevents an individual wheel from slipping.

Vehicles fitted with ABS* can be equipped with electronic differential lock (EDL).

General

The EDL makes it much easier, and sometimes at all possible, to start off, accelerate and climb a steep hill when the conditions of the road surface are unfavourable.

Operating principle

The EDL is activated automatically, that is without any action on the part of the driver. It monitors the speeds of the driven wheels with the aid of the ABS sensors. Should only **one** drive wheel begin spinning on a slippery surface there will be an appreciable difference in the speed of the driven wheels. The EDL function brakes the slipping wheel and the differential transmits a greater driving force to the other driven wheel. This control process is also accompanied by noises.

Overheating of the brakes

The EDL switches off automatically if unusually severe stresses exist in order to avoid excessive heat generation in the disc brake on the wheel which is being braked. The vehicle can continue to be driven and has the same characteristics as a vehicle not fitted with EDL.

The EDL switches on again automatically as soon as the brake has cooled down.

WARNING

- **Carefully depress the accelerator when accelerating on uniformly slippery road surfaces, such as ice and snow. The driven wheels might still spin despite the EDL and affect the stability of the vehicle – risk of an accident!**
- **You should always adapt your style of driving to the condition of road surface and to the traffic situation even when your vehicle is fitted with EDL. The increased safety offered must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise – risk of an accident!**

Note

- If the ABS warning light comes on, this may also indicate a fault in the EDL. Please have the vehicle inspected as soon as possible by a specialist garage.
- Changes to vehicle (e.g. on engine, on the brakes, on chassis or another combination of tyres and wheels) can influence the function of the EDL ⇒ page 166, "Accessories, changes and replacement of parts". ■

Traction control system (TCS)

The traction control system prevents the driven wheels from spinning when accelerating.



Fig. 135 TCS switch

General

The TCS makes it much easier, and sometimes at all possible, to start off, accelerate and climb a steep hill when the conditions of the road surface are unfavourable.

Operating principle

The TCS switches on automatically when the engine is started and then conducts a self-test. The system monitors the speeds of the driven wheels with the aid of the ABS sensors. If the wheels are spinning, the force transmitted to the road surface is automatically adapted by reducing the engine speed. The system operates at all speeds.

The TCS operates in combination with the ABS ⇒ page 126, "Antilock brake system (ABS)*". The TCS will not function if a fault exists in the ABS system.

The TCS warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when there is a fault on the TCS ⇒ page 31.

Switching off

You can switch the TCS off and on again as you wish by pressing the button ⇒ fig. 135. The TCS warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the system is switched off ⇒ page 31.

The TCS should normally always be switched on. It may be good practice in certain exceptional cases, such as when you wish to have wheel slip, to switch off the system.

Examples:

- when driving with snow chains
- when driving in deep snow or on a loose surface
- when it is necessary to rock a vehicle when it has become stuck.

then you should switch on the TCS again.

WARNING

You should always adjust your style of driving to the conditions of the road surface and the traffic situation. The increased safety offered must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise – risk of an accident!

Note

- All four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres in order to achieve problem-free operation of the TCS. Differing rolling circumferences of the tyres can lead to an undesirable reduction in the engine output.
- Changes to vehicle (e.g. on engine, on the brakes, on chassis or another combination of tyres and wheels) can influence the function of the TCS ⇒ page 166, "Accessories, changes and replacement of parts". ■

Brakes

What has a negative effect on braking efficiency?

Wear-and-tear

Wear-and-tear to the brake pads is greatly dependent on the operating conditions of the vehicle and your style of driving. Particularly if you drive a great deal in towns and over short distances or if you adopt a sporty style of driving, it may be necessary to have the thickness of the brake pads inspected at a specialist garage between the service inspections.

Wet roads or road salt

There may be a certain delay before the brakes take full effect under certain conditions such as when driving through water, during heavy rain showers or after the vehicle has been washed in an automatic vehicle wash, since the brake discs and brake pads may ▶

be moist or even have a coating of ice on them in winter. You should dry the brakes as soon as possible by applying and releasing the brakes several times.

There also may be a certain delay before the full braking efficiency is available when driving on roads which have been treated with road salt if you have not used the brakes for some considerable time beforehand. The layer of salt on the brake discs and brake pads must first be rubbed off when you apply the brakes.

Corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the brake pads occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system.

We recommend cleaning the brake discs by firmly applying the brakes at a fairly high speed if you do not make much use of the braking system or if surface corrosion is present ⇒ △.

Faults in the brake surface

If you notice that the braking distance has suddenly become longer and that the brake pedal can be depressed further, it is possible that a brake circuit of the dual-circuit brake system has failed. Drive, in such cases, to the nearest specialist garage without delay in order to have the problem rectified. Drive at a reduced speed while on your way to the dealer and adapt your style of driving to the higher brake pedal pressure required.

Low brake fluid level

An insufficient level of brake fluid may result in problems in the brake system. The level of the brake fluid is monitored electronically ⇒ page 31, "Brake system ⑩".

WARNING

- Only apply the brakes for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.
- When retrospectively mounting a front spoiler, solid wheel hubs etc. one must ensure that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced otherwise the braking system could run too hot.
- Allow for the fact that new brake pads do not achieve their full braking efficiency until approximately 200 kilometres. New brake pads must be first "run in" before they develop their optimal friction force. You can, however,

WARNING (continued)

compensate for this slightly reduced braking force by increasing the pressure on the brake pedal. This guideline also applies to any new brake pads installed at a future date.

Caution

- Never allow the brakes to rub by applying slight pressure if you do not wish to brake the vehicle. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear.
- Before negotiating a steep downhill section, reduce your speed, shift down into the next lower gear. This enables you to make full use of the braking power of the vehicle and reduces the strain on the brakes. Any additional braking should be done intermittently, not continuously. ■

Brake booster

The brake booster boosts the pressure which you generate with the brake pedal. The necessary pressure is only generated when the engine is running.

WARNING

- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary.
- The brake booster only operates when the engine is running. Greater physical effort for braking is required when engine is switched off. Because if you do not stop as normal, this can cause an accident and severe injuries. ■

Antilock brake system (ABS)*

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking.

General

The ABS contributes significantly to enhancing the active safety of your vehicle. Compared to a vehicle not fitted with the ABS brake system, you are able to retain optimal steering ability even during a full brake application on a slippery road surface because the wheels do not lock up.

You must not expect, however, that the braking distance will be shorter under all circumstances as a result of the ABS. The braking distance for example on gravel and fresh snow, when you should anyway be driving slowly and cautiously, will be longer.

Operating principle

The brake pressure will be reduced on a wheel which is rotating at a speed which is too low for the speed of the vehicle and tending to lock. This control cycle is noticeable from a **pulsating movement of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises. This is consciously intended to provide the driver with the information that the wheels are tending to lock (ABS control range). You must always keep the brake pedal depressed to enable the ABS to optimally control the brake application in this braking range. Never interrupt the application of the brakes!

WARNING

- The ABS can also not overcome the physical limits of your vehicle. Please do not forget this, particularly when driving on icy or wet road surfaces. If the ABS is operating within the control range, adapt your speed immediately to the conditions of the road surface and the traffic situation. The increased safety offered by the ABS must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise – risk of an accident!
- The normal braking system is still fully functional if there is an ABS fault. Visit a specialist garage as quickly as possible and adjust your style of driving to take account of the ABS fault in the meantime since you will not know the extent of the fault and in how far the braking efficiency is affected.

Note

- A warning light comes on if a fault occurs in the ABS system ⇒ page 30.
- Changes to vehicle (e.g. on engine, on the brakes, on chassis or another combination of tyres and wheels) can influence the function of the ABS ⇒ page 166, "Accessories, changes and replacement of parts". ■

Brake Assist*

During a severe brake application (e.g. if a hazard exists), the Brake Assist increases the braking force and thus makes it possible to rapidly produce the pressure required in the brake system.

The majority of drivers do apply the brakes in good time in dangerous situations, but do not depress the brake pedal with sufficient pressure. Consequently, it is not possible for the vehicle to achieve its maximum deceleration and the vehicle covers a greater distance than necessary.

The Brake Assist is activated by the very quick operation of the brake pedal. In such cases, a much greater braking pressure exists than during a normal brake application. This makes it possible, even with a relatively low resistance of the brake pedal, to produce an adequate pressure in the brake system in the shortest possible time, which is required for maximum deceleration of the vehicle. You must apply the brake pedal firmly and hold it in this position in order to achieve the shortest possible braking distance.

The Brake Assist is able to help you achieve a shorter braking distance in emergency situations by rapidly producing the pressure required in the brake system. It fully exploits the attributes of the ABS. After you release the brake pedal, the function of the Brake Assist is automatically switched off and the brakes operate in the normal way.

WARNING

- The Brake Assist is also not able to overcome the physical limits of your vehicle in terms of the braking distance required.
- Adapt your speed to the conditions of the road surface and to the traffic situation.
- The increased safety offered by the Brake Assist must not tempt you to take a greater safety risk than otherwise. ■

Driving and the Environment

The first 1 500 kilometres and then afterwards

A new engine

The engine has to be run in during the first 1 500 kilometres.

Up to 1 000 kilometres

- Do not drive faster than 3/4 of the maximum speed of the gear in use, that is 3/4 of the maximum permissible engine speed.
- Do not use full throttle.
- Avoid high engine revolutions.
- Do not tow a trailer.

From 1 000 up to 1 500 kilometres

- Increase the power output of the engine **gradually** up to the full speed of the gear engaged, that is up to the maximum permissible engine revolutions.

During the first operating hours the engine has higher internal friction than later until all of the moving parts have harmonized. The driving style which you adopt during the first approx. 1 500 kilometres plays a decisive part in the success of running in your vehicle.

You should not drive at unnecessarily **high engine revolutions** even after the running-in period is complete. The maximum permissible engine speed is marked by the beginning of the red zone on the scale of the revolutions counter. Shift up into the next higher gear on a vehicle fitted with manual gearbox before the red zone is reached. **Extremely** high engine revolutions are automatically governed, by the way.

For a vehicle fitted with a manual gearbox the converse situation also applies: Do not drive at engine revolutions which are **too low**. Shift down as soon as the engine is no longer running smoothly.

Caution

All the speed and engine revolution figures apply only when the engine is at its normal operating temperature. Never rev up an engine which is cold, neither when the vehicle is stationary nor when driving in individual gears.



For the sake of the environment

Not driving at unnecessarily high engine revolutions and shifting to a higher gear as early as possible are ways to minimise fuel consumption and operating noise levels and protects the environment. ■

New tyres

New tyres have to be "run in" since they do not offer optimal grip at first. You should take account of this fact for the first 500 kilometres and drive particularly carefully. ■

New brake pads

Allow for the fact that new brake pads do not achieve their full braking efficiency until approximately 200 kilometres. New brake pads must be first "run in" before they develop their optimal friction force. You can, however, compensate for this slightly reduced braking force by increasing the pressure on the brake pedal.

This guideline also applies to any new brake pads installed at a future date.

During the running-in period, you should avoid excessive stresses on the brakes. This includes, for example, violent braking, particularly from very high speeds, and also when crossing mountain passes. ■

Catalytic converter

Proper operation of the emission control system (catalytic converter) is of major significance for driving your vehicle in an environmentally conscious way.

Please refer to the following guidelines:

- For vehicles with petrol engine only refuel with unleaded petrol ⇒ page 144.
- Never run the fuel tank completely empty.
- Do not switch off the ignition while you are driving the vehicle.
- Do not pour too much oil into the engine ⇒ page 151, "Replenishing engine oil".
- Do not tow-start the vehicle over a distance of more than 50 metres ⇒ page 175, "Tow-starting a vehicle".

If you drive your vehicle in a country in which unleaded petrol is not available, you must have the catalytic converter replaced later when driving the vehicle into a country in which use of a catalytic converter is mandatory.

WARNING

- In view of the high temperatures which may be produced in the catalytic converter, one should always park a vehicle in such a way that the catalytic converter cannot come into contact with easily flammable materials below the vehicle – a risk of fire!
- Never use additional underbody protection or corrosion-protection agents for the exhaust pipes, catalytic converters or heat shields. Such substances might ignite when driving – risk of fire!

Caution

- On vehicles fitted with a catalytic converter, never let the fuel tank run completely empty. An irregular fuel supply can result in poor ignition or misfiring. Unburnt fuel may get into the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter.
- Filling the tank even only once with leaded petrol will result in the catalytic converter being destroyed.

- If you detect misfiring, a drop in performance or irregular engine running when driving, reduce your speed immediately and have the vehicle inspected by the nearest specialist garage. The symptoms described may be caused by a fault in the ignition system. Unburnt fuel may get into the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter.



For the sake of the environment

Even if the exhaust system is operating properly, a sulphur-like exhaust odour may be produced under certain operating conditions of the engine. This depends on the sulphur content of the fuel. It is often sufficient to refuel with unleaded premium-grade petrol of a different brand or at a different filling station. ■

Driving in an economical and environmentally conscious manner

General

Your personal style of driving is a major factor.

Your fuel consumption, any pollution of the environmental and the wear-and-tear to the engine, brakes and tyres, depend essentially on three factors:

- your personal style of driving,
- the conditions under which your vehicle is operated,
- technical aspects.

You can easily improve your fuel economy by 10 – 15 percent by driving in an economical way with foresight. This section is intended to provide you with a number of tips on how to protect the environment and at the same time save money.

The fuel consumption can naturally also be influenced by factors which are beyond the driver's control. It is, for example, normal for the fuel consumption to increase in winter and under worsened conditions such as poor road conditions, towing a trailer, etc.

The technical requirements for low fuel usage and economic efficiency of the vehicle have already been built into the vehicle at the works. Special attention has been given to minimising negative effects on the environment. It is necessary to take note of the ►

guidelines given in this chapter in order to make best use of these characteristics and to maintain their effectiveness.

The optimal engine speed should be obtained when accelerating, in order to avoid a high fuel consumption and resonance of the vehicle. ■

Looking ahead when driving

A vehicle's highest fuel consumption occurs it accelerates.

Avoid accelerating and braking unnecessarily. If you drive with foresight you will not need to brake so often and will also then not have to accelerate so much. Let your vehicle coast to a stop, for example, if this is possible, when you see that the next set of traffic lights is at red. ■

Shifting gears and saving energy

Shifting up early saves on fuel.

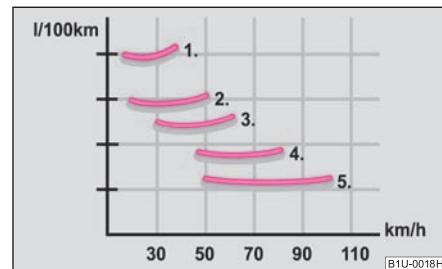


Fig. 136 Fuel consumption in litres/100 km. and speed in km/h.
B1U-0018H

Manual gearbox

- Drive no more than about one length of your vehicle in first gear.
- Always shift up into the next higher gear at approx. 2 000 to 2 500 revs.

An effective way of achieving good fuel economy is to shift up **early**. You will consume more fuel if you drive at unnecessarily high revolutions in any given gear.

The ⇒ fig. 136 shows the ratio of fuel consumption to the speed of your vehicle in the relevant gears. Fuel consumption in 1st gear is the highest and in 5th gear is the lowest.



Note

Also use the information supplied by the multi-functional indicator* ⇒ page 19. ■

Avoiding full throttle

Driving more slowly means saving fuel.

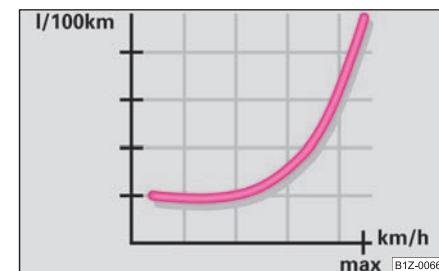


Fig. 137 Fuel consumption in litres/100 km. and speed in km/h.
B1Z-0066H

Sensitive use of the accelerator will not only significantly reduce fuel consumption but also positively influence environmental pollution and wear of your vehicle. ■

You should avoid exploiting the top speed of your vehicle wherever possible. Fuel consumption, pollutant emissions and vehicle noises increase disproportionately at high speeds.

The ⇒ fig. 137 shows the ratio of fuel consumption to the speed of your vehicle. You will cut your fuel consumption by half if you only make use three-quarters of the possible top speed of your vehicle. ■

Reducing idling

Idling also costs fuel.

It is worthwhile switching off the engine in a traffic jam or when waiting at a level crossing or at traffic lights with a lengthy red phase. Even after just 30 – 40 seconds you will have saved more fuel than that is needed when you start the engine up again.

If an engine is only idling it takes much longer for it to reach its normal operating temperature. Wear-and-tear and pollutant emissions, though, are particularly high in the warming-up phase. This is why you should drive off right after starting the engine. Do avoid high engine revolutions at this time, however. ■

Regular servicing

A poorly tuned engine consumes an unnecessarily high amount of fuel.

Having your vehicle serviced regularly at a specialist garage enables you to satisfy **one** of the requirements for economical motoring even before you set off on your journey. Keeping your vehicle properly serviced not only has a positive effect on the safety of your vehicle and maintaining its value, but also saves on **fuel**.

A poorly tuned engine can result in a fuel consumption which is 10% higher than normal.

The foreseen maintenance work should be undertaken exactly according to the Service schedule by a specialist garage.

Also check the **oil level** after refueling. **Oil consumption** is dependent to a considerable extent on the load and speed of the engine. Oil consumption could be as high as 0.5 litres/1 000 km depending on your style of driving.

It is quite normal that a new engine has a higher oil consumption at first, and reaches its lowest level only after a certain running in time. It is therefore not possible to correctly assess the oil consumption of a new vehicle until after you have driven about 5 000 km.



For the sake of the environment

- You can achieve additional improvements in your fuel economy by using high-lubricity oils.

- Check the ground below your vehicle at regular intervals to detect any leakages in good time. Please have your vehicle inspected by a specialist garage if you find any stains caused by oil or other fluids on the floor. ■

Avoid driving short distances

Short distances result in an above-average high fuel consumption.

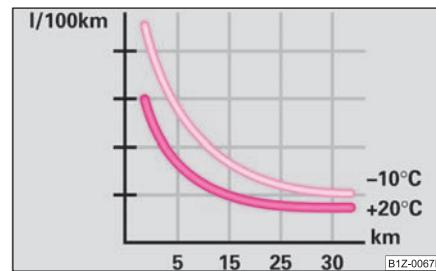


Fig. 138 Fuel consumption in litres/100 km at different temperatures

- Avoid driving a distance of no more than 4 km if the engine is cold.

The engine and catalytic converter must first have reached their optimal **operating temperature** in order to effectively reduce fuel consumption and pollutant emissions.

The cold engine vehicle consumes approx. 15 – 20 litres/100 km of fuel immediately after starting. Fuel consumption drops to 10 litres/100 km after just 1 kilometre. The engine reaches its operating temperature (outside temperature and engine dependent) only after about **4 to 10** kilometres and the fuel consumption then stabilizes. You should therefore avoid driving short distances whenever possible.

An important factor in this connection is also the **ambient temperature**. The ⇒ fig. 138 shows the different fuel consumptions for the same distance, on the one hand at +20°C and on the other hand at -10°C. Your vehicle has a higher fuel consumption in winter than in summer. ■

Checking tyre inflation pressures

Tyres which are correctly inflated save fuel.

Always ensure that your tyres are inflated to the correct pressure at all times. The rolling resistance will be increased if the tyre filling pressure is too low. This will not only increase fuel consumption but also tyre wear and the driving behaviour will worsen.

Always check the inflation pressure of the tyres when **cold**.

Do not drive with **winter tyres** all year round for this costs about 10 % more fuel. Winter tyres are also louder. ■

No unnecessary ballast

Transporting ballast costs fuel.

The fact that every kilogram of extra **weight** increases your fuel consumption means that it is worth taking a look in the luggage compartment to avoid transporting any unnecessary ballast.

It is particularly in town traffic, when one is accelerating quite often, that the vehicle weight will have a significant effect upon the fuel consumption. A rule of thumb here is that an increase in weight of 100 kilograms will cause an increase in fuel consumption of about 1 litre/100 kilometres.

You may frequently also leave a **roof rack fitted** on just out of convenience, although you no longer need it. The increased aerodynamic drag of your vehicle causes it to use about 10% more fuel than normal at a speed of 100 - 120 km/h, even when you are not carrying a load on the roof. ■

Saving electricity

Generating electricity costs fuel.

- Switch off electrical components as soon as you no longer need them.

When the engine is running, the alternator generates and supplies electrical power. The greater the load on the alternator as a result of having a large number of electrical

components switched on, the more fuel will be consumed for operating the alternator. ■

Keeping a log of your fuel consumption

If you really wish to keep a close check on your **fuel consumption**, it is best to enter the figures in a logbook. This does not take much time but is a very worthwhile exercise. It enables you to detect any change (positive and negative) at an early stage and to take any appropriate action.

If you find that your fuel consumption is too high, you should reflect on how, where and in what conditions you have driven the vehicle since you last refuelled. ■

Environmental compatibility

Environmental protection has played a major role in the design, selection of materials and manufacture of your new Škoda. Particular emphasis has been paid to a number of aspects, including:

Design measures

- Joints designed to be easily detached;
- Simplified disassembly due to the modular structure system;
- Improved purity of different classes of materials;
- Identification of all plastic parts in accordance with VDA Recommendation 260;
- Reduced fuel consumption and exhaust emission CO₂;
- Minimum fuel leakage during accidents;
- Reduced noise.

Choice of materials

- Extensive use of recyclable material;
- Air conditioning filled with CFC-free refrigerant;
- No cadmium;
- No asbestos;
- Reduction in the "vapourisation" of plastics.



Manufacture

- Solvent-free cavity protection;
- Solvent-free protection of the vehicle for transportation from the production plant to the customer;
- The use of solvent-free adhesives;
- No CFCs used in the production process;
- Without use of mercury;
- Use of water-soluble paints. ■

Motoring abroad

General

Other circumstances may exist abroad.

It is also possible, in certain countries, that the Škoda Service Partner network is limited or has not been established yet. This is the reason why obtaining certain spare parts may be somewhat complicated and specialist garage personnel may only be able to make limited repairs. Škoda Auto in the Czech Republic and relevant importers are happy to provide information about technical aspects of the vehicle, required maintenance work and possibilities for getting repairs done. ■

Unleaded petrol

A vehicle fitted with a petrol engine must always be refuelled with unleaded petrol ⇒ page 129. The automobile associations can provide you with information regarding the locations of filling stations which offer unleaded petrol. ■

Headlight

The low beam of your headlights is set asymmetrically. It illuminates the side of the road on which you are driving to a greater extent. If you drive abroad on the other side of the road, you will dazzle oncoming traffic.

In order to prevent the dazzling of oncoming traffic, it is necessary to stick a sticker over a certain part of the headlights.

Headlight stickers can be obtained as a spare part from the specialist garages.

The adaptation of the headlights with Xenon lamps (applies to vehicles which are designed for driving on the left and on the right) is performed by switching over a bezel in the module for low beam by a specialist garage.

Note

You can obtain further information regarding masking over or converting the headlights from your specialist garage. ■

Avoiding damage to your vehicle

When driving on poor roads and lanes or when driving over kerbstones, steep ramps etc., you must pay particular attention to ensuring that any low-slung parts of the vehicle, such as spoiler and exhaust, do not touch the ground and get damaged.

This particularly applies to models with a lowered suspension (sport suspension) and also when your vehicle is fully laden. ■

Towing a trailer

Towing a trailer

Technical requirements

The towing device must satisfy certain technical requirements.

Your vehicle is designed primarily for transporting persons and luggage. It can, however, also be used for towing a trailer – provided certain technical equipment is fitted.

If your vehicle has already been supplied with a **factory-fitted** towing device then everything that is necessary for towing a trailer in technical terms, and in terms of the law, has already been taken into account.

Your vehicle is fitted with a 13-pin power socket for the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer. If the trailer which you wish to tow has a **7-pin connector**, you can use a suitable adapter⁵⁾ from Škoda original accessories.

This work must be carried out in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications if a towing device is retrofitted.

Specialist garages are familiar with details relating to retrofitting a towing device and for any necessary modifications to the cooling system.

WARNING

We recommend that you have the towing device from Škoda original accessories installed by a specialist garage. He is familiar with all the relevant details relating to retrofitting such equipment. There is a risk of an accident if the towing device is not properly fitted! ■

General Maintenance

There are a number of points to pay attention to when towing a trailer.

Trailer load

The permissible trailer load must on no account be exceeded.

You can negotiate appropriately steeper inclines and descents if you do not make full use of the permissible trailer load.

The trailer loads specified only apply for **altitudes** up to 1 000 metres above mean sea level. The fact that the engine power output drops with increasing height due to a lowering of air pressure and thus the ability to climb, means that the towed weight must be reduced by 10% for every further increase of 1 000 metres in height above sea level. The towed weight is the weight of the (laden) vehicle and the (laden) trailer together. One should take this into account before driving up to higher altitudes.

The trailer and drawbar load information on the type plate of the towing device are merely test data for the towing device. The data relating to your vehicle, which is often less than this test data, can be found in your vehicle registration documents.

Distribution of the load

Distribute the load in the trailer in such a way that any heavy items are located as close as possible to the axle. Secure the items to prevent them slipping.

Tyre pressure

Correct the tyre inflation pressure on your vehicle for that of "fully laden", ⇒ page 160. The inflation pressure of the tyres fitted to the trailer adjust in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation.

Exterior mirrors

You have to have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard rear-view mirrors. Both exterior mirrors should be attached to folding arms. Adjust the mirrors so that they provide you with an adequate field of view to the rear.

⁵⁾ In some countries the adapter is supplied with the towing device.

Headlights

Before starting off with a hitched trailer, also check the setting of the headlights. Alter the setting as necessary with the aid of the headlight beam adjuster ⇒ page 48.

Detachable ball head

The ball rod is detachable on vehicles which feature a factory-fitted towing device. It is stowed together with separate fitting instructions in the spare wheel well in the luggage compartment of the vehicle.

Further information on the towing device ⇒ page 136.

Note

- We recommend that you also have your vehicle inspected between service intervals if you tow a trailer frequently.
- The handbrake on the towing vehicle must be put on when coupling and decoupling the trailer. ■

Driving Tips

Particular caution is required when towing a trailer.

- Do not, as far as possible, drive with your vehicle unladen and the trailer laden.
- Do not make full use of the legal maximum speeds. This applies in particular to downhill sections.
- Apply the brakes in good time.
- Keep a check on the coolant temperature gauge if the outside temperature is high.

Distribution of weight

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Maintain a particularly low speed if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

Driving speed

Do not drive faster than 80 km/hour for safety reasons. This also applies for countries in which higher speeds are allowed.

The fact that the driving stability of the vehicle + trailer combination reduces with increasing speed means that the legally allowed speed should not be used when there are unfavourable road, weather or wind conditions, particularly near accident black spots.

You must always reduce your speed immediately as soon as you detect even just the **slightest swaying** of the trailer. On no account attempt to stop the trailer from "swaying" by accelerating.

Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first and then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking. Shift down gears in good time before negotiating a downhill section to allow the engine to also act as a brake.

Engine overheating

Please keep a check on the coolant temperature gauge if you have to negotiate a lengthy slope in a low gear at a high engine speed when the outside temperature is very high ⇒ page 16.

If the needle of the coolant temperature gauge moves into the right-hand area or even the red area of the scale, reduce your speed immediately. Stop and switch off the engine if the warning light  in the instrument cluster begins flashing. Wait a few minutes and check the level of coolant in the coolant expansion bottle ⇒ page 153, "Inspecting the coolant level".

Please refer to the following guidelines ⇒ page 28, "Coolant temperature/coolant level ".

The coolant temperature can be reduced by switching on the heating.

Any increase in the cooling effect of the coolant fan through shifting down a gear and increasing the engine speed is not possible since the fan speed is independent of the engine speed. One should also not drop a gear for this reason when towing a trailer as long as the engine can manage the slope without any drop in speed. ■

Detachable towing device*

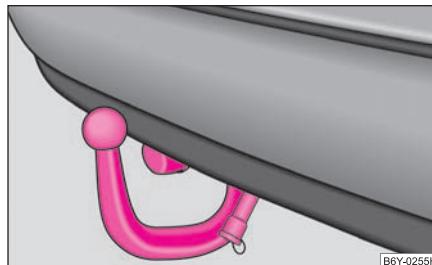


Fig. 139 Detachable ball head

The detachable ball head of the towing device is stowed in a box for the car tool kit in the spare wheel well in the luggage compartment.

An instruction for correct installation and removal of the ball head of the towing device is supplied with the ball head.

Inspect the ball head to ensure that it is properly locked each time before setting off. The inspection is performed by turning the closed locking lever downwards. If the locking lever can only be turned around a small angle (approx. 5°), the locking mechanism is O.K. After the inspection pull the locking lever back again to its stop. The towing device must not be used, if it does not wish to close or the locking lever turns slightly in the closed position.

WARNING

Do not use any aids or tools for installing or removing the ball head. This might result in damage to the locking mechanism to the extent that the safety of the towing device is no longer assured - risk of an accident.

Note

- Do not carry out any modifications or repairs to the ball head or to any other components on the towing device.
- Contact a specialist garage if you encounter any problems using the device.
- Never unlock the ball head with a trailer coupled to it.

- You should take off the ball head if you drive without towing a trailer. Inspect whether the end cover properly seals off the mounting shaft.
- Remove the ball head beforehand if you wish to clean your vehicle using a steam jet. Ensure that the end cover properly seals the mounting shaft.
- It is recommended to wear gloves when installing and removing. ■

General Maintenance

Taking care of your vehicle and cleaning the vehicle

General

Proper care retains the value of your vehicle.

Regular and proper care retains **the value** of your vehicle. It may also be one of the requirements for the acceptance of warranty claims relating to corrosion damage and paint defects on the bodywork.

We recommend using a preservative from Škoda genuine accessories offered by your Škoda dealer. Please follow the instructions for use on the package.

WARNING

- Care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always store care products in a safe place, out of the reach of children – risk of poisoning!

For the sake of the environment

- Always select environmentally-friendly products when purchasing vehicle care products.
- Do not dispose of the packages with residues of care products in domestic waste. ■

Care of the exterior of vehicle

Washing the vehicle

Frequent washing protects your vehicle.

The best protection for your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is **frequent** washing and wax treatment. How often you should wash your vehicle depends on a wide range of factors, such as:

- Frequency of use,
- The parking situation (garage, below trees etc.),
- Season of the year,
- Weather conditions,
- Environmental influences.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, tree sap, road and industrial dust, tar, soot particles, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain adhering to the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It may therefore be necessary, in certain circumstances, to wash the car **once a week**. It may also be sufficient, however, to wash the car **once a month** followed by appropriate wax treatment.

It is essential to also thoroughly wash the **underside of your vehicle** at the end of the winter road salting and gritting period.

WARNING

When washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the brake system can affect the braking efficiency – risk of accident! ■

Automatic vehicle wash systems

The paintwork of the vehicle is sufficiently resistant that the vehicle can be washed normally in automatic vehicle wash plants without any problem. The actual stress to which the paintwork is subjected, however, depends greatly on the design of the vehicle wash system, the filtering of the water and the type of washing and care products used. If the paintwork of your vehicle appears matt after being washed or even has scratches, point this out to the operator of the vehicle wash plant. Use a different vehicle wash plant, if necessary.

There are no particular points to note before washing your vehicle in such a plant other than the usual precautionary measures (closing windows and sliding/tilting roof, moving any factory-fitted aerials down flat against the bodywork, etc.).

If you have any particular attached parts fitted to your car - such as spoiler, roof rack system, two-way radio aerial - it is best to first of all consult the operator of the car wash plant.

It is important to degrease the lips of the windscreens wiper rubbers after passing through the automatic vehicle wash system.

Caution

Do not screw the swivelling down roof aerial tight before washing the vehicle in an automatic vehicle wash system - risk of damage! ■

Washing vehicle by hand

It is important to first soften the dirt with plenty of water and rinse it off as thoroughly as possible before washing your vehicle by hand.

One should then clean the vehicle using a soft **washing sponge**, **washing glove** or a **washing brush** and only slight pressure. Work from the top to the bottom - beginning with the roof. Only place slight pressure on the vehicle paintwork during cleaning. Only use a **car shampoo** for stubborn dirt.

Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

Clean wheels, door sills and similar parts last. Use a second sponge for such areas.

Rinse off the vehicle well after giving it a wash and dry it off using a chamois leather.

WARNING

- The ignition should always be switched off when you wash your vehicle - risk of accident!
- Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when you are cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims - risk of cuts.

Caution

- Do not wash your vehicle in bright sunlight - risk of paint damage.
- Ensure that the jet of water is not aimed directly at the locking cylinders or at the door and panel joints if you spray your vehicle in winter down with a hose - risk of freezing.
- Do not use any insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar cleaning products - risk of damage to the surface of paintwork.



For the sake of the environment

Only wash your vehicle at washing bays specifically reserved for this purpose. This ensures that no water which may be contaminated by oil flows into the sewage system. It is not even permitted to wash your vehicle in certain areas except at such specific washing bays. ■

Washing with a high-pressure cleaner

When you wash your vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, it is essential to comply with the instructions for use of the cleaning equipment. This applies in particular to the **pressure** used and to the **spraying distance**. Maintain a sufficiently large distance to soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulation material.

On no account use **circular spray nozzles** or so-called **dirt cutters**!

WARNING

It is particularly important that you do not clean tyres with circular spray jets. Visible but also invisible damage to tyres may occur even at a relatively large spraying distance and if sprayed only for a short time - risk of accident!

Caution

The water containing wax must be no hotter than 60°C, otherwise the vehicle can be damaged. ■

Wax treatment

Good wax treatment is an effective way of protecting the paintwork from harmful environmental influences and minor mechanical damage.

The vehicle must be treated with a high-quality hard wax polish at the latest, when no more drops form on the clean paintwork.

A new layer of a high-quality hard wax polish can be applied to the clean bodywork after it has dried thoroughly. Even if you use a wax preserver regularly we still recommend that you treat the paintwork of the vehicle at least twice a year with hard wax.

Caution

Never apply wax to the windows. ■

Polishing

Polishing is only necessary if the paintwork of your vehicle has become unattractive and if it is no longer possible to achieve a gloss with wax preservers.

You must treat the paintwork with a wax preserver if the polish you use does not contain any preserving elements ⇒ page 139, "Wax treatment".

We recommend using a preservative from Škoda genuine accessories offered by your Škoda dealer.

Caution

- You must not treat mat painted parts or plastic with polishing products or hard wax.
- Do not polish the paintwork of the vehicle in a dusty environment, otherwise the paintwork can be scratched. ■

Chrome parts

First clean the chrome parts with a damp cloth and then polish them with a soft, dry cloth. If it does not prove to be adequate, use a chrome care product from Škoda original accessories.

Caution

Do not polish the chrome parts in a dusty environment, otherwise they can be scratched. ■

Paint damage

Slight damage to paintwork such as scratches, scuffs or traces of chip damage must be touched up immediately with paint (Škoda painting pen) **before** any corrosion can result. You can of course have this work carried out by a specialist garage.

Specialist garages have a range of matching **touch-up pens** or **spray cans** available in the colour of your vehicle.

The paint number of the original paintwork of your vehicle is indicated on the vehicle data sticker ⇒ page 187.

Any corrosion which has already formed must be removed thoroughly. Apply a **corrosion protection primer** and then the paint to the affected point. You can of course have this work carried out by a specialist garage. ■

Plastic parts

External plastic parts are cleaned by normal washing. Plastic parts and synthetic leather can also be treated with **special solvent-free plastic cleaning agents** if a damp cloth is not sufficient. Paint care products are not suitable for plastic parts.

Caution

Solvent-free cleaners attack the material and can damage it. ■

Windows

Only use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors. You should not move the ice scraper forward and backward but in one direction on the window which you are cleaning in order to avoid any damage to the surface of the glass.

You can best remove residues of rubber, oil, grease, wax or silicone by using a special window cleaner or a special silicone remover.

You should also clean the windows regularly from the inside.

Do not use window leathers which you have used to polish the vehicle body to dry off the windows. Residues of preservatives in the window leather can dirty the window and reduce visibility.

Do not affix any stickers over the inside of the rear window to avoid damage to the **heating elements of the rear window heater**.

We recommend using a preservative from Škoda genuine accessories offered by your Škoda dealer.

Caution

Never remove snow or ice from the glass parts with warm or hot water - risk of formation of cracks in the glass! ■

The headlight lenses

Please do not use any aggressive cleaning or chemical solvent products for cleaning the front headlights - risk of damage to the plastic lenses. **Please use** soap and clean warm water.

Caution

Never wipe the headlights dry and do not use any sharp objects for cleaning the plastic lenses, this may result in damage to the protective paintwork and consequently in formation of cracks on the headlight lenses, e.g. through effect of chemical products. ■

Door and window seals

The rubber seals on the doors, boot lid, bonnet and windows remain supple and last longer if you treat them from time to time with a rubber care product (e.g. with a spray with silicone-free oil). You also avoid premature wear of the seals and prevent leakages in this way. It is also easier to open the doors. Rubber seals which are well cared for also do not stick together in cold winter weather. ■

Locking cylinder

We recommend that you use the spray from Škoda original accessories with regreasing and anticorrosive effect for de-icing locking cylinders.

Note

When washing your vehicle, ensure that as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinders. ■

Wheels

Steel wheels

You should also thoroughly wash the wheels and wheel trims when giving your vehicle its regular wash. This prevents any brake dust, dirt and road salt from sticking to the wheel hubs. You can remove stubborn brake abrasion adhering to the wheels with an industrial cleaner. Touch up any damage to the paintwork on the wheels before rust is able to form.

Light alloy wheels

Regular care of light alloy wheels is necessary in order to retain their decorative appearance over long periods. It is particularly useful to remove any road salt and brake abrasion from the light alloy wheels every two weeks, otherwise the paintwork of the wheel rim will suffer damage. Wash thoroughly and then treat the wheels with a protective product for light alloy wheels which does not contain any acidic components. You should provide the wheel hubs with a hard wax layer every three months. You must not use any products which cause abrasion when treating the wheel hubs. Any damage to the paint layer on the wheel hubs must be touched up immediately.

We recommend using a preservative from Škoda genuine accessories offered by your Škoda dealer.

WARNING

One should remember when cleaning the wheels that moisture, ice and road salt may adversely affect braking efficiency - risk of an accident!

Note

Severe layers of dirt on the wheels can also result in wheel imbalance. This may show itself in the form of a wheel vibration which is transmitted to the steering wheel which, in certain circumstances, can cause premature wear of the steering. This means it is necessary to remove the dirt. ■

Underbody protection

The underside of your vehicle is protected for life against chemical and mechanical influences.

One cannot, however, completely rule out damage to the **protective layer** when driving so we recommend that you inspect the protective layer on the underside of your vehicle and on the chassis at certain intervals - this is best done at the beginning and end of the winter - and to touch up any damaged areas.

Specialist garages have suitable **spray products** available as well as the necessary equipment and are familiar with the instructions for use. It is therefore best to have such touch-up work or additional corrosion protection measures carried out by a specialist garage.

WARNING

Never use additional underbody protection or corrosion-protection agents for the exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, diesel particle filter or heat shields. When the engine reaches its operating temperature, these substances might ignite - risk of fire! ■

Protection of hollow spaces

All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected for life by a layer of **protective wax** applied in the factory.

This wax protection does not require to be inspected or re-treated. Please remove any small amount of wax which flows out of the cavities at high temperatures with a plastic scraper and clean the spot using petroleum cleaner.

WARNING

Safety and environmental protection regulations should be observed when using petroleum cleaner to remove wax - a risk of fire! ■

Engine compartment

Good corrosion protection is very important, particularly in winter when one often drives over its salt-strewn roads. One should therefore clean the whole engine compartment before and after the salt spreading period and treat with preservative in order to prevent the salt from being destructive.

Specialist garages have the cleaning agents and preservatives recommended by the manufacturer and also the required equipment.

WARNING

- **It is necessary to observe the guidelines given in the chapter before working on the engine compartment ⇒ page 148.**
- **Let the engine cool down before cleaning the engine compartment.**

Caution

- Engine cleaning may be only be undertaken when the ignition is off.
- It is recommended to cover the generator before washing the engine compartment.

For the sake of the environment

The dirty water produced by washing the engine has washed away petrol, and residues of grease and oil and should therefore be cleaned by an oil separator. This is why engine washing should only be undertaken in a specialist garage or at a fueling station (when these are fitted with the required equipment). ■

Care of the interior of vehicle

Plastic parts, artificial leather and cloths

You can clean plastic parts and artificial leather with a moist cloth. You should only treat such parts with special **solvent-free plastic cleaning and care products** it does prove to be adequate.

Upholstery cloth and cloth trim on the doors, luggage compartment cover, headliner etc. are best treated with special cleaning products, using if necessary a **dry foam** and a soft sponge or brush.

We recommend using a cleaning product from Škoda genuine accessories offered by your Škoda dealer.

Caution

Solvent-free cleaners attack the material and can damage it. ■

Fabric covers of electrically heated seats

Do **not clean** the seat covers moist as this may result in damage to the seat heating system.

Clean such covers using special agents, for example dry foam. ■

Natural leather

Natural leather requires quite particular care and attention.

Leather should be treated from time to time according the following guidelines depending on how much it is used.

Normal cleaning

- Clean soiled areas of the leather with slightly moistened cotton or woollen cloth.

Severe soiling

- Clean severely soiled areas with a cloth dipped in a mild soapy solution (2 spoonfuls of natural soap to 1 litre of water).

- Ensure that the leather is not soaked through at any point and that no water gets into the stitching of the seams.
- Dry off the leather with a soft, dry cloth.

Removing stains

- Remove fresh stains which are **water-based** (e.g. coffee, tea, juices, blood etc.) with an absorbent cloth or household paper or use the cleaner from the care set for a stain which has already dried in.
- Remove fresh stains on a **fat base** (e.g. butter, mayonnaise, chocolate etc.) with an absorbent cloth or household cleaning paper or with the cleaner from the care set if the stain has not yet penetrated into the surface.
- Use a grease dissolver for **grease stains which have dried in**.
- Eliminate **special stains** (e.g. ball-point pens, felt pen, nail varnish, dispersion paint, shoe cream etc.) with a special stain remover suitable for leather.

Leather care

- Treat the leather every six months with the leather care product available from specialist garages.
- Apply only a small amount of the care product.
- Dry the leather off with a soft cloth

We recommend that you consult a specialist garage if you have any questions regarding cleaning and care of the leather interior in your vehicle.

Caution

- You must on no account treat the leather with solvents (e.g. gasoline, turpentine), floor wax, shoe cream or such like.
- Avoid leaving your vehicle for lengthy periods in bright sunlight in order to avoid bleaching the leather. If you leave your vehicle parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the leather from the direct rays of the sun by covering it over.
- Sharp-edged objects on items of clothing such as zip fasteners, rivets, sharp-edged belts may leave permanent scratches or signs of rubbing on the surface.

 Note

- Use a care cream with light blocker and impregnation effect regularly and each time after cleaning the leather. The cream nourishes the leather, allows it to breathe and keeps it supple and also provides moisture. It also creates surface protection.
- Clean the leather every 2 to 3 months, remove fresh soiling each time this occurs.
- Remove fresh stains such as those from ball-point pens, ink, lipstick, shoe cream etc., as quickly as possible.
- Care also for the leather dye. Refreshen areas which have lost their colour with a special coloured leather cream as required.
- The leather is a natural material with specific properties. During the use of the vehicle, minor optical changes can occur on the leather parts of the covers (e. g wrinkles or creases as a result of the stress of the covers). ■

Seat belts

- Keep the seat belts clean!
- Wash seat belts which have become soiled using a mild soapy solution.
- Inspect the seat belts regularly to ensure they are in good condition.

Belt webbing which has become severely soiled may prevent the inertia reel from reeling up the belt properly.

 **WARNING**

- **The seat belts must not be removed for cleaning.**
- **Never clean the seat belts chemically as dry cleaning may destroy the fabric.**
The seat belts must also not be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liquids (such as acids etc.).
- **Seat belts which have damage to the webbing, the connections, the inertia reel or the lock should be replaced by a specialist garage.**
- **Inertia reel belts must be completely dried before being reeled up.** ■

Fuel

Petrol

Grades of petrol

Your vehicle can only be operated with **unleaded petrol**, which complies with the standard **EN 228**. The individual grades of petrol are distinguished by their octane number (RON). On the inside of the fuel filler flap, you will find the information regarding the RON required by your engine ⇒ page 145, fig. 141.

Prescribed fuel - unleaded petrol 95/91 RON

Use unleaded petrol **95 RON**. You can also use unleaded petrol **91 RON**, but this leads to a slight loss in performance.

If, in case of necessity, the vehicle must be refuelled with petrol of a lower octane number than the one prescribed, you must continue driving at medium engine speeds and low engine load. Driving at high engine speeds or a high engine load can severely damage the engine! Refuel as soon as possible with petrol of the prescribed octane number.

Prescribed fuel - unleaded petrol min. 95 RON

Use unleaded petrol **95 RON**.

In case of necessity, you can refuel with petrol **91 RON** if petrol **95 RON** is not available. You must continue driving at medium engine speeds and minimum engine load. Driving at high engine speeds or a high engine load can severely damage the engine! Refuel as soon as possible with petrol of the prescribed octane number.

Even in case of necessity, you must not use petrol of a lower octane number than **91**, otherwise the engine can be severely damaged!

You can find further information on refuelling ⇒ page 145.

Unleaded petrol with higher octane number

You can make unlimited use of unleaded petrol which has a higher octane number than the one prescribed.

On vehicles with prescribed unleaded petrol **95/91 RON**, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** does not result in a noticeable power increase or a lower fuel consumption.

On vehicles with prescribed unleaded petrol **min. 95 RON**, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** does not result in a power increase or a lower fuel consumption.

Caution

- All Škoda vehicles with petrol engines are equipped with a catalytic converter and must be only driven with unleaded petrol. Filling the tank even only once with leaded petrol will result in the catalytic converter being destroyed!
- Only use unleaded petrol which complies with the standard **EN 228**.
- If you use petrol with a lower octane number than the one prescribed, the engine can be severely damaged!

Note

The handling, performance and life of your engine are determined to a significant extent by the quality of the fuel. Do not use any petrol additives. ■

Diesel

Diesel fuel

Your vehicle can only be operated with **diesel fuel**, which complies with the standard **EN 590** (standard **DIN 51628** in Germany, standard **ÖNORM C 1590** in Austria).

Fuel additives

You must not use fuel additives, so-called "flow improvers" (petrol and similar products) in diesel fuel.

You can find information on refuelling ⇒ page 145. ▶

Caution

- Therefore, your vehicle can only be operated with diesel fuel which complies with the standard **EN 590** (standard **DIN 51628** in Germany, standard **ÖNORM C 1590** in Austria). Filling the tank even only once with diesel fuel which does not comply with the standard, can result in damage to the engine parts, the lubrication system, the fuel and exhaust system.
- If by mistake you have refuelled with a different fuel other than the diesel fuel which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. petrol), do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! This can result in severe engine damage! Contact a specialist garage and have the fuel system of the engine cleaned.
- Water which has collected in the fuel filter can result in engine problems.
- Your vehicle is not adapted for use of biofuel (RME), therefore this fuel must not be refuelled and driven. The use of biofuel (RME) can lead to damage to the engine or the fuel system. ■

Operation in winter

Winter-grade diesel fuel

A different grade of diesel fuel is available at filling stations in winter than during the summer. Using "summer-grade diesel fuel" at temperatures below 0°C can result in operational problems because the diesel becomes viscous as a result of paraffin separation.

It is therefore the case that EN 590 prescribes diesel fuel class for certain periods of the year which can also be purchased at the corresponding time during the year. "Winter-grade diesel fuel" will still operate properly even at a temperature of -20°C.

It is often the case in countries with different climatic conditions that diesel fuels available have a different temperature characteristic. The specialist garages and the filling stations in the country concerned will be able to provide you with information regarding the diesel fuels available.

Prewarming fuel

The vehicle is fitted with a fuel filter prewarming system. This secures operation of a vehicle using diesel fuel down to an environmental temperature of -25°C.

Caution

It is not permitted to add the various fuel additives on the market, including petrol, to diesel fuel in order to improve its flow properties. ■

Refuelling



Fig. 140 Switch for opening the fuel filler flap from the driver seat

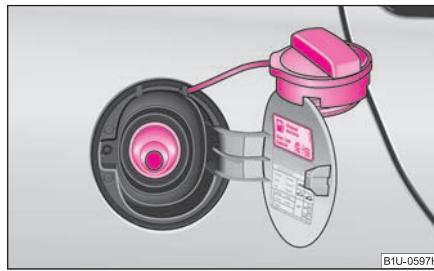


Fig. 141 Fuel filler flap with cap unscrewed

The filler tube of the fuel reservoir is located in the rear right side part of the vehicle.

Opening the fuel filler cap

- Open the fuel filler flap with the hand.
- On vehicles without remote unlocking of the fuel filler flap from the driver's seat, unlock the fuel filler cap on the fuel filler tube by turning the vehicle key to the left. ►

- Unscrew the fuel filler cap anti-clockwise and place the fuel filler cap from above on the fuel filler flap ⇒ [page 145, fig. 141](#).

Closing fuel filler cap

- Screw on the cap by turning it to the right until it is heard to lock.
- On vehicles without remote unlocking of the fuel filler flap from the driver's seat, lock the fuel filler cap on the fuel filler tube by turning the vehicle key to the right and withdraw the key.
- Close the fuel filler flap until it locks.

Open the fuel filler flap from the driver's seat*

- Press the switch to open the fuel filler flap ⇒ [page 145, fig. 140](#).
- Unscrew the fuel filler cap anti-clockwise and place the fuel filler cap from above on the fuel filler flap ⇒ [page 145, fig. 141](#).

Closing fuel filler cap

- Screw on the cap by turning it to the right until it is heard to lock.
- Close the fuel filler flap until it locks.

The correct grade of fuel for your vehicle as well as the tyre size and inflation pressures are stated on a sticker affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap. Further information on fuel ⇒ [page 144, "Fuel"](#).

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 55 litres.

WARNING

Pay attention to any legal requirements if you do carry a spare canister in the vehicle. We do not recommend carrying any fuel canisters in your vehicle for safety reasons. The canister can be damaged in the event of an accident and fuel may leak out.

Caution

- Before refuelling it is necessary to switch off the auxiliary heating system (auxiliary heating and ventilation) *.

- Remove any fuel which has spilled onto the paintwork of your vehicle immediately - risk of paint damage!
- On vehicles fitted with a catalytic converter, never let the fuel tank run completely empty. An irregular supply of fuel to the engine can result in misfiring and unburnt fuel may get into the exhaust system, which may result in overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.
- Make sure that the valve is not pressed into the filler tube when inserting the pump nozzle into the filler tube. Otherwise you are unintentionally filling up the volume, which in case of heat can cause an expansion of the fuel. This can lead to an overflow of fuel or damage to parts of the fuel reservoir.
- The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time, provided the nozzle has been operated properly. Do not continue refuelling - otherwise the expansion volume is filled up. ■

Inspecting and replenishing

Engine compartment

Bonnet remote release

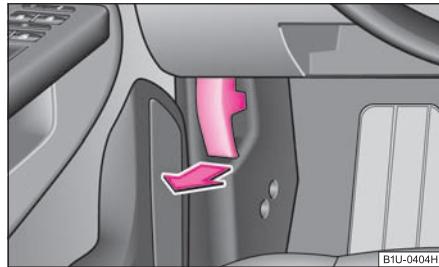


Fig. 142 Bonnet release lever

Bonnet remote release

- Pull the unlocking lever below the dash panel on the driver's side ⇒ fig. 142.

The bonnet jumps out of its lock as a result of the spring force.



Note

Ensure that the windscreen wiper arms are not folded out before opening the bonnet otherwise damage could occur to the paintwork. ■

Opening and closing the bonnet.

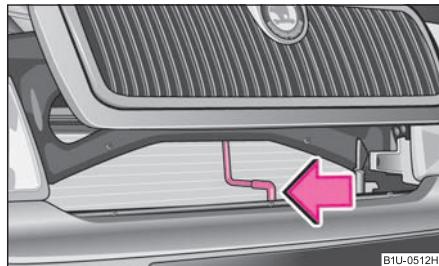


Fig. 143 Radiator grille: Locking lever

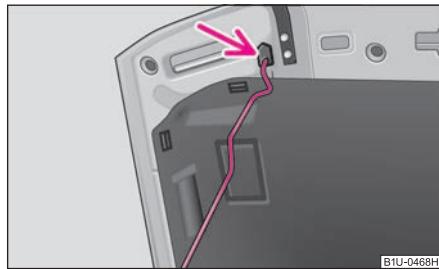


Fig. 144 Securing the bonnet with the bonnet support

Opening the bonnet

- Unlock the bonnet ⇒ fig. 142.
- Grip with the hand under the radiator grille and lift up the bonnet.
- Press the locking lever in direction of arrow ⇒ fig. 143 and lift up the bonnet.
- Take the bonnet support out of its holder and set it in the opening designed for it ⇒ fig. 144.

Closing the bonnet

- Lift the bonnet slightly and unhook the bonnet support. Press the bonnet support into the holder designed to hold it.
- Allow the bonnet to drop from a height of about 30 cm into the lock - bonnet **do not press down on it!**

WARNING

- Never open the bonnet if you see that steam or coolant is flowing out of the engine compartment - risk of scalding! Wait long enough until the steam or coolant has stopped escaping.
- For safety reasons, the bonnet must always be properly closed when driving. One should therefore check that the lock has in fact engaged properly after closing the bonnet.
- Stop your vehicle immediately while driving if you notice that the lock is not properly engaged and close the bonnet properly - risk of an accident! ■

Working in the engine compartment

Particular care is required when carrying out any work in the engine compartment!

There is a risk of injuries, scalding, accidents and fire when working in the engine compartment, e.g. inspecting and replenishing oil and other fluids. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions stated below and with the general applicable rules of safety. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area ⇒ 

WARNING

- Never open the bonnet if you see that steam or coolant is flowing out of the engine compartment - risk of scalding! Wait long enough until the steam or coolant has stopped escaping.
- Switch off the engine and pull out the ignition key.
- Apply the handbrake firmly.

WARNING (continued)

- On vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox, move the gearshift lever into Neutral.
- Allow the engine to cool down.
- Keep children clear of the engine compartment.
- Never spill oil and other fluids over the hot engine. Such fluids (e.g. the anti-freeze contained in the coolant) may ignite!
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system - particularly on the battery.
- Never place your hand into the radiator fan as long as the engine is still warm. The fan might suddenly start running!
- Never open the cap of the coolant expansion bottle as long as the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurized!
- Cover over the cap of the coolant expansion reservoir with a large cloth when opening it as protection for your face, hands and arms from hot steam or hot coolant.
- Do not let objects, such as e.g. cleaning cloth or tools lie in the engine compartment.
- If you wish to work under the vehicle, you must secure the vehicle from rolling away and support it with suitable supporting blocks; the lifting jack* is not sufficient for this - risk of injury!
- In cases where it is necessary to carry out inspection work when the engine is running there is an additional risk from rotating parts (e.g. the V-ribbed belt, alternator, radiator fan) and from the high-voltage ignition system. Please observe in addition the following:
 - Never touch the electrical cables of the ignition system.
 - Absolutely avoid any jewellery, loose items of clothing or long hair from getting into the rotating parts of the engine - Hazard! Therefore remove any jewellery beforehand, tie up your hair and wear tight fitting clothing.
- Please also comply with the warning instructions stated below when carrying out any essential work on the fuel system or on the electrical system:
 - Always separate the car battery from the electrical system.
 - Do not smoke.

 **WARNING (continued)**

- Never carry out any work close to naked flames.
- Always keep a working fire extinguisher at hand.

 **Caution**

When replenishing fluids in the engine, always ensure that the fluids are on no account mixed up. This may result in major operating problems and also vehicle damage! ■

Overview of the engine compartment

The main inspection points

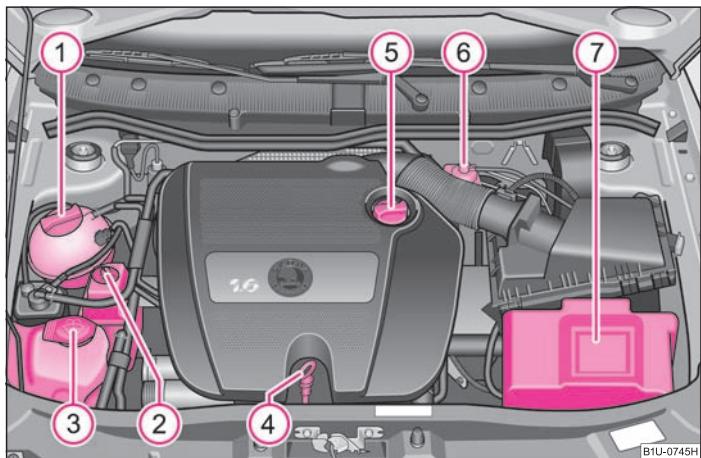


Fig. 145 1.6 ltr./75 kW petrol engine

1.6 ltr./75 kW petrol engine ⇒ fig. 145

- | | |
|--|-----|
| (1) Coolant expansion bottle | 153 |
| (2) Reservoir for hydraulic liquid of power steering | |

(3) Windshield washer fluid reservoir	159
(4) Engine oil dipstick	150
(5) Engine oil filler opening	151
(6) Brake fluid reservoir	154
(7) Battery (below a cover)	155

 **Note**

The location of the inspection points in the engine compartment of petrol and diesel engines is practically identical. ■

Engine oil

Engine oil specifications

The engine of your vehicle has been factory-filled with a high-grade oil which you can use throughout the year - except in extreme climatic regions.

You can mix various oils together with each other when refilling with oil. This does not, however, apply for models with flexible service intervals (QG1).

Engine oils are, of course, undergoing continuous further development. Thus the information stated in this Owner's Manual is only correct at the time of publication.

Authorised Škoda Service Partners are informed by Škoda Auto about current changes. This why you should always have engine oil changed by an authorised Škoda Service Partner.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following must be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

Engine oil specifications for models with flexible service intervals (QG1)

Petrol engines	Specification	Content ^a
1.4 ltr./55 kW - EU4	VW 503 00, VW 504 00	3,2
1.6 ltr./75 kW - EU4/EU2 DDK	VW 503 00, VW 504 00	4,5
1.8 ltr./110 kW - EU4/EU3D	VW 504 00	4,5

- ^{a)} Oil capacity with oil filter change. Inspect oil level when filling; do not fill up too much. The oil level must be between the markings \Rightarrow page 150, fig. 146.

Diesel engines	Specification	Content ^{a)}
1.9 ltr./74 kW TDI PD - EU4	VW 506 01, VW 508 00	4,3

Engine oil specifications for vehicles with fixed service intervals (QG2)

Petrol engines	Specification	Content ^{a)}
1.4 ltr./55 kW - EU4	VW 501 01, VW 502 00	3,2
1.6 ltr./75 kW - EU4/EU2 DDK	VW 501 01, VW 502 00	4,5
1.8 ltr./110 kW - EU4/EU3D	VW 502 00	4,5

- ^{a)} Oil capacity with oil filter change. Inspect oil level when filling; do not fill up too much. The oil level must be between the markings \Rightarrow fig. 146.

If the oils specified above are not available, oils according to ACEA A2 or ACEA A3 can be used once for refilling.

Diesel engines	Specification	Content ^{a)}
1.9 ltr./74 kW TDI PD - EU4	VW 506 01	4,3

If the oils specified above are not available, oils according to ACEA B3 or ACEA B4 can be used once for refilling.

Caution

Only the above-mentioned oils may be used on vehicles with flexible service intervals (QG1). We recommend always refilling with oil of the same specification since this will maintain the properties of the oil. In exceptional cases, you must top up only once engine oil complying with Specification VW 502 00 (only for petrol engines) or Specification VW 505 01 (only for diesel engines) to maximum 0.5 litres. You must not use other engine oils - risk of engine damage!

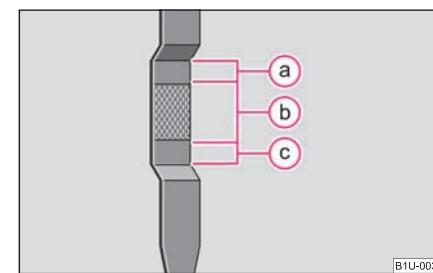


Note

- Before a long drive we recommend that you purchase and carry with you engine oil which complies with the specification for your vehicle. Consequently, you will always have the correct engine oil for refilling.
- We recommend using a preservative from the Škoda original accessories offered by your Škoda dealer.
- For further information - see Service schedule. ■

Check engine oil level

The dipstick indicates the level of oil in the engine.



B1U-0031H

Fig. 146 Dipstick

Checking the oil level

- Ensure that the vehicle is positioned on a level surface.
- Switch the engine off.
- Open the bonnet \Rightarrow ! in "Working in the engine compartment" on page 148.
- Wait a few minutes and pull out the oil dipstick ①.
- Wipe off the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again fully.
- Then withdraw the dipstick again and read off the oil level.

Oil level within range ②

- You must **not** top up the oil.

Oil level within range (b)

- You **may** top up the oil. It is possible that the oil level may then be within range (a) after doing this.

Oil level within range (c)

- You **must** top up the oil ⇒ page 151. It is sufficient, once this is done, to keep the oil level within range (b).

It is normal for the engine to consume oil. The oil consumption may be as much as 0.5 l/1 000 km depending on your style of driving and the conditions under which you operate your vehicle. The oil consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 kilometres.

One should therefore check the oil level at regular intervals, preferably every time after the fuel tank is filled or after driving for long stretches.

We recommend maintaining the oil level within the range (a) if the engine has been operating at high loads, for example during a lengthy motorway trip during the summer months, towing a trailer or negotiating a high mountain pass, **but not above this**.

The warning light in the instrument cluster will indicate whether the oil level is too low ⇒ page 29. In this case, check the oil level as soon as possible. Top up with an appropriate quantity of oil.

Caution

- The oil level must on no account extend beyond the range (a). Danger of damaging the catalytic converter.
- **Do not continue your journey** if for some reason it is not possible under the conditions prevailing to top up with oil. **Switch the engine off** and obtain professional assistance from a specialist garage, otherwise it could lead to severe engine damage. ■

Replenishing engine oil

- Inspecting the engine oil level ⇒ page 150.
- Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening (2) ⇒ page 150, fig. 146.
- Pour in a suitable grade of oil in portions of 0.5 litres ⇒ page 149.

- Inspect the oil level ⇒ page 150.
- Carefully screw on the cap of the filler opening and push the dipstick in fully.

WARNING

- **Avoid dripping oil onto hot parts of the engine when topping up will oil - a risk of fire!**
- **Read and observe the warning notes ⇒ page 148, "Working in the engine compartment" before working in the engine compartment.**

For the sake of the environment

The oil level must on no account be above the range (a) ⇒ page 150. Oil will otherwise be drawn in through the crankcase ventilation and may pass through the exhaust system to atmosphere. The oil may combust in the catalytic converter and damage it. ■

Changing engine oil

The engine oil must be changed at the intervals stated in the Service schedule or according to the service interval indicator ⇒ page 18.

WARNING

- **Only carry out the engine oil change, if you have the required professional knowledge!**
- **Read and observe the warning notes ⇒ page 148, "Working in the engine compartment" before working in the engine compartment.**
- **Let the engine cool down - risk of burning from hot oil.**
- **Wear an eye protection - risk of caustic burns due to oil splashes.**
- **Oil is toxic! Store old oil in a safe place out of the reach of children and unauthorized persons until you dispose of it properly.**

Caution

You must not pour any additives into the engine oil - risk of engine damage! Damage, which results from such product, are excluded from the warranty. ►



For the sake of the environment

- You must on no account pour oil into the ground or into the sewage system.
- In view of the problems involved in properly disposing of old oil, the material, equipment and the knowledge required for such work, we recommend that you have the oil and oil filter change carried out by a specialist garage.



Note

After your skin has come in contact with the oil, you must thoroughly wash your skin. ■

Power steering

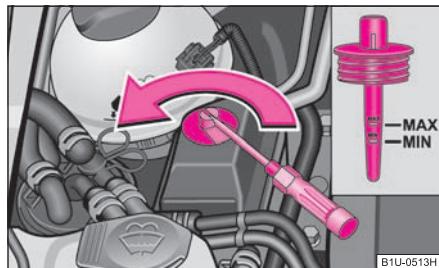


Fig. 147 Hydraulic oil dipstick

The reservoir for hydraulic oil of power steering is located in the front right of the engine compartment → page 149, fig. 145.

Check hydraulic oil

The hydraulic system of the power steering is filled with the hydraulic oil designated in the catalogue as G 002 000.

Perform the inspection of the hydraulic oil level when the engine is cold and not running.

The hydraulic oil level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings → fig. 147. If the level drops below the marking "MIN", it is necessary that the power steering is checked by a specialist garage. It is not sufficient to solely refill with hydraulic oil.



Note

If the engine is not running (when towing) or if the V-ribbed belt is torn, the power steering does not operate. The vehicle is fully steerable however. There is however increased force required to turn the steering wheel. ■

Cooling system

Coolant

The job of the coolant is to cool the engine.

The cooling system does not require any maintenance under normal operating conditions. The coolant consists of water with a concentration of coolant additive of 40 %. This mixture not only provides antifreeze protection down to -25°C but also protects the cooling and heating system from corrosion. It also prevents the formation of scale and significantly increases the boiling point of the coolant.

You must therefore not reduce the concentration of antifreeze agent in the coolant by adding water, also not during the summer months or in countries with a warm climate. **The concentration of coolant additive in the coolant must be at least 40%.**

You can increase the amount of antifreeze in the coolant if a higher concentration of antifreeze is necessary for climatic reasons but only up to 60% (antifreeze protection down to approx. -40°C). The antifreeze protection tails off above that concentration.

Vehicles exported to countries with a cold climate (e.g. Sweden, Norway, Finland) are already factory-filled with a coolant which offers antifreeze protection down to about -35°C. In these countries the concentration of coolant additive should be at least 50%.

Coolant

The cooling system is factory-filled with coolant (purple in colour), which complies with the specification TL-VW 774 G.

We recommend that you use the same coolant additive - G13 (purple in colour) - for topping up the system.

Please contact a specialist garage if you have any questions regarding the coolant or if you wish to fill up with a different coolant.

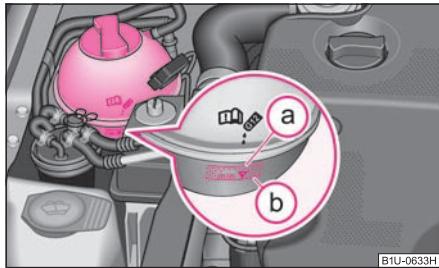
A specialist garage can also supply you with the correct coolant additives.



Caution

- Other coolant additives may cause operational problems which, in particular, involves significantly reducing the anticorrosion effect.
- Any faults or problems resulting from corrosion may cause a loss of coolant and, as a consequence of this, result in major engine damage. ■

Inspecting the coolant level



**Fig. 148 Engine compartment:
Coolant expansion bottle**

The coolant expansion bottle is located in the engine compartment on the right.

- Switch the engine off.
- Open the bonnet ⇒ ▲ in "Working in the engine compartment" on page 148.
- Check the level of coolant in the coolant expansion bottle ⇒ fig. 148. When the engine is cold, the coolant level must lie between the (a) and (b) markings. When the engine is warm, the level may also lie slightly above the hatched part.

If the coolant level in the reservoir is too low, this is indicated by the warning light in the instrument cluster ↗ ⇒ page 28. We nevertheless recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Loss of coolant

A loss of coolant is first and foremost an **indication of a leak** in the system. You should not merely top up the coolant in the reservoir. It is also important to have the cooling system inspected without delay by a specialist garage.

Losses can only occur through the pressure relief in the cap of the coolant expansion bottle which is completely free of leaks if the coolant boils as a result of overheating and is forced out of the cooling system.

WARNING

Read and observe the warning notes ⇒ page 148, "Working in the engine compartment" before working in the engine compartment.

Caution

One should contact a specialist garage as soon as possible if the source of overheating itself cannot be determined and removed, since there may be grave damage to the engine. ■

Replenishing the coolant

- Switch the engine off.
- Allow the engine to cool down.
- Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion reservoir ⇒ fig. 148 and unscrew the cap **carefully** by turning it to the left ⇒ ▲.
- Top up the coolant.
- Screw the cap tight until it is heard to lock.

The coolant which you use for replenishing the system, must comply with one specific specification ⇒ page 152, "Coolant". Do not use an alternative additive if the coolant additive G13 is not available in exceptional cases. Just top up the system with water and as soon as possible arrange adjustment to correct the mixing ratio of water and coolant additive again by a specialist garage.

Only use fresh coolant for topping up the system.

Do not top up the fluid above the hatched part! Excess coolant which is heated up is forced out of the cooling system through the pressure relief valve in the cap of the coolant compensation bottle.

Wait until the engine has cooled down for a system which has suffered a major loss of coolant before pouring in coolant. This is necessary to avoid engine damage. ►

WARNING

- The cooling system is pressurized! Do not open the cap of the coolant expansion bottle if the engine is still hot – risk of scalding!
- The coolant additive and thus all of the coolant is harmful to your health. Avoid contact with the coolant. Coolant vapours are also harmful to the health. It is important, therefore, to always safely store any coolant additive in its original container out of the reach of children – risk of poisoning!
- If any splashes of coolant get into your eyes, rinse out your eyes immediately with clear water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.
- You should also consult a doctor without delay if you have inadvertently swallowed coolant.

Caution

Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible under the conditions prevailing to top up with coolant. Switch the engine off and obtain professional assistance from a specialist garage, otherwise it could lead to severe engine damage.

For the sake of the environment

Do not re-use coolant if it is necessary to drain the coolant in the system. It should be collected and disposed of in compliance with environmental protection regulations. ■

Radiator fan

The radiator fan may switch on suddenly.

The radiator fan is driven by an electric motor and controlled according to the coolant temperature.

The radiator fan may continue running for up to 10 minutes after the engine has been switched off – even if the ignition is also off. It may also switch on suddenly after a certain time, if

- the coolant temperature has risen because of an accumulation of heat or
- the warm engine compartment is heated up additionally by strong sunlight.

WARNING

You must therefore be aware when working in the engine compartment that the fan may switch on suddenly – risk of injury! ■

Brake fluid

Inspecting the brake fluid level

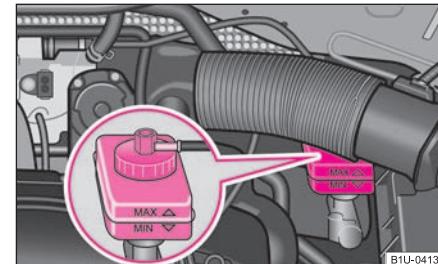


Fig. 149 Engine compartment: Brake fluid reservoir

The brake fluid reservoir is located on the left of the engine compartment. The brake fluid reservoir on right-hand steering models is positioned on the other side of the engine compartment.

- Switch the engine off.
- Open the bonnet ⇒  in “Working in the engine compartment” on page 148.
- Inspect the brake fluid level in the reservoir ⇒ fig. 149. The level must be between the “MIN” and “MAX” markings.

A slight drop in the fluid level results when driving due to normal wear-and-tear and automatic adjustment of the brake pads, and is perfectly normal.

There may be an indication of a leak in the brake system, however, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the “MIN” marking. If the brake fluid level is too low, this is indicated by the warning light  lighting up in the

instrument cluster ⇒ page 31. In this case **stop immediately and do not drive any further! Obtain professional assistance.**

⚠ WARNING

- Read and observe the warning notes ⇒ page 148, "Working in the engine compartment" before working in the engine compartment.
- If the fluid level has dropped below the "MIN" marking, do not drive any further - risk of accident! Obtain professional assistance. ■

Replacing brake fluid

Brake fluid absorbs moisture. This causes the fluid to absorb moisture from the surrounding air over a period of time. Excessive water in the brake fluid may be the cause of corrosion in the brake system. The water content also lowers the boiling point of the brake fluid.

One may only use new genuine brake fluid from Škoda Auto. The brake fluid must comply with one of the following standards or specifications:

- VW 50114
- FMVSS 116 DOT4
- DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4

We recommend that you have the brake fluid replaced by an **authorised Škoda Service Partner** as part of an Inspection Service.

⚠ WARNING

Using old brake fluid can result in severe stress on the brakes because of the formation of vapour bubbles in the brake system. This greatly impairs the braking efficiency and thus also the safety of your vehicle.

⚠ Caution

Brake fluid damages the paintwork of the vehicle.



For the sake of the environment

In view of the problems involved with proper disposal of brake fluid, the special tools and the professional knowledge required, you should have the brake fluid replaced by authorised Škoda Service Partners. ■

Battery

Working on the battery

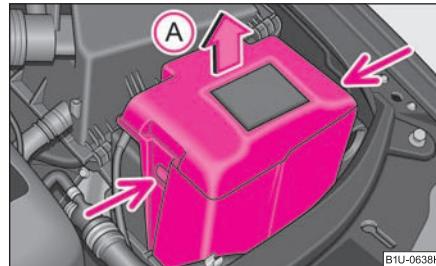


Fig. 150 Engine compartment:
The battery

The battery is located in the engine compartment below a plastic cover*.

- Press the interlocks on the sides of the battery cover ⇒ fig. 150 and pull the cover upwards see arrow (A).
- The installation of the battery cover takes place in the reverse order.

Removal and installation of the battery is not recommended since it can, under certain circumstances, lead to major damage. Contact a specialist garage.

There is a risk of injuries, scalding, accidents and burns when carrying out any work on the battery and on the electrical system. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions ⇒ ⚠ stated below and with the general applicable rules of safety. ▶

 **WARNING**

- The battery acid is strongly corrosive and must, therefore, be handled with the greatest of care. Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling batteries. Corrosive fumes in the air irritate the air passages and lead to conjunctivitis and inflammation of the air passages in the lungs. Battery acid corrodes dental enamel and creates deep wounds after contact with the skin which take a long time to heal. Repeated contact with diluted acids causes skin diseases (inflammations, ulcers, skin cracks). Acids coming into contact with water are diluted accompanied by significant development of heat.
- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings. Protect the eyes with safety glasses or a shield! There is the danger of suffering blindness! If any battery electrolyte gets into your eye, rinse out your eye immediately with clear water for several minutes. Contact a doctor without delay.
- Splashes of acid on your skin or clothes should be neutralised as soon as possible using soap suds and then rinsed with plenty of water. Contact a doctor immediately if you swallow battery electrolyte.
- Keep batteries out of the reach of children.
- Hydrogen is released when you charge a battery and a highly explosive gas mixture is produced. An explosion can be caused through sparkling over during unclamping or loosening of the cable plug while the ignition is on.
- Bridging of the poles will create a short circuit (e.g. through metal objects, cables). Possible consequences of a short circuit: Melting of lead struts, explosion and burning of the battery, jets of acid spurting out.
- It is prohibited to work with a naked flame and light, to smoke or to carry out any activities which produce sparks. Avoid creating sparks when working with cables and electrical devices. Strong sparking represents a risk of injury.
- Before carrying out any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine, the ignition as well as all electrical components and disconnect the negative cable (-) on the battery. If you wish to replace a bulb it is sufficient to switch off the appropriate light.
- Never charge a frozen or thawed battery - risk of explosion and caustic burns! Replace a frozen battery.

 **WARNING (continued)**

- Never use a battery which is damaged - risk of explosion! Immediately replace a damaged battery.

 **Caution**

- You must only disconnect the battery if the ignition is switched off, otherwise the electrical system (electronic components) of the vehicle may be damaged. When disconnecting the battery from the electrical system of the vehicle, first disconnect the negative terminal (-) of the battery. Then disconnect the positive terminal (+).
- When reconnecting the battery, first connect the positive terminal (+) and only then the negative terminal (-) of the battery. You must on no account connect the cables wrongly - risk of a cable fire.
- Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the vehicle body otherwise damage could occur to the paintwork.
- Do not place the battery in direct daylight in order to protect the battery housing from the effects of ultra-violet light.

**For the sake of the environment**

A removed battery is a special type of waste which is harmful to the environment - contact your specialist garage regarding disposing of the battery.

**Note**

Please also refer to the guidelines ⇒ page 158, "Disconnecting and reconnecting the battery", also after connecting the battery. ■

Battery with a two-tone indicator

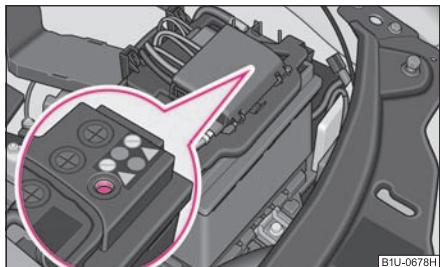


Fig. 151 The battery: Show

An indicator for the electrolyte level, the so-called magic eye ⇒ fig. 151, is located on the top of the battery. The indicator changes its colour in line with the electrolyte level in the battery.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully knock on the indicator before carrying out the check.

- Black colour - electrolyte level is correct.
- Colourless or light yellow colour - electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Batteries, which are more than 5 years old, must be replaced. We recommend you have the battery checked or replaced by a specialist garage.

Caution

If the vehicle has not been driven for more than 3 to 4 weeks, the battery will discharge because certain electrical components consume electricity (e.g. control units) also in idle state. You can prevent the discharging of the battery by disconnecting the negative terminal or charging the battery constantly with a very low charging current. Please also refer to the notes when working on the battery ⇒ ! in "Working on the battery" on page 155.

Note

- Batteries with two-tone indicator, which are mounted as of factory, are marked with a code which always begins with **5K0**. The exact marking can be e.g. **5K0 915 105 D**.
- Replacement batteries with two-tone indicator, which were obtained from Škoda original accessories, are marked with the code **000 915 105 Dx**, whereby "x" stands for a variable. The exact marking can be e.g. **000 915 105 DB**. ■

Inspecting the electrolyte level

The battery is practically **maintenance-free** under normal operating conditions. We do, however, recommend that you have the electrolyte level inspected from time to time by a specialist garage when outside temperatures are high or when driving on long trips. You should also have the electrolyte level ⇒ page 158 checked each time the battery is charged.

The electrolyte level of the battery will also be checked as part of the Inspection Service. ■

Operation in winter

The battery has to provide greater amounts of electricity during the winter. It also has only part of the initial power output at low temperatures that it has at normal temperatures.

A discharged battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0°C.

We therefore recommend that you have the battery checked by a specialist garage before the start of the winter and recharged if necessary.

WARNING

**Never charge a frozen or thawed battery – risk of explosion and caustic burns.
Replace a frozen battery. ■**

Charging the battery

A properly charged battery is essential for reliably starting the engine.

- Read the warning notes ⇒  in "Working on the battery" on page 155 and ⇒ .
- Switch the ignition and all electrical components off.
- Only for "quick-charging": Disconnect both battery cables (first of all "negative", then "positive").
- Carefully attach the terminal clamps of the charger to the battery terminals (red = "positive", black = "negative").
- You can now plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch on the charger.
- When charging is completed: switch the charger off and unplug the mains cable from the power socket.
- Only then should you disconnect the terminal clamps of the charger.
- Reconnect the cables to the battery (first of all "positive", then "negative").

It is not normally necessary to disconnect the cables of the battery if you recharge the battery using low amperages (as for example from a **mini-charger**). Please also refer to the instructions from the charger manufacturer.

A charging current of 0.1 of the total battery capacity (or lower) is that which should be used until full charging is achieved.

It is, however, necessary to disconnect both cables before charging the battery with high amperages, so-called "**quick-charging**".

"Quick-charging" a battery is **dangerous** ⇒  in "Working on the battery" on page 155. It requires a special charger and appropriate knowledge. We therefore recommend that you have your battery quick-charged only by your specialist garage.

A discharged battery may already **freeze** at temperatures just below 0°C ⇒ . We recommend that you no longer use a battery which has thawed out because the casing of the battery may be cracked through the formation of ice and this would allow battery electrolyte to flow out.

The vent plugs of the battery should not be opened for charging.



WARNING

**Never charge a frozen or thawed battery – risk of explosion and caustic burns.
Replace a frozen battery.**

Disconnecting and reconnecting the battery

On disconnecting and reconnecting the battery the following functions are initially deactivated or are no longer able to operate fault-free.

Operation	Operating measure
Electrical power window (operational faults)	⇒ page 43
Enter radio code number	see Radio Operating Instructions
Set hours	⇒ page 19
Data in the multi-functional indicator* are deleted.	⇒ page 19

We recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist garage to ensure full functionality of all electrical systems. ■

Replacing the battery

You should only replace a battery with a new battery of the same capacity, voltage (12 V), amperage and of the same size. Specialist garages have a range of suitable batteries available.

In view of the problems involved with its proper disposal, we recommend having the battery replaced by a specialist garage.



For the sake of the environment

Batteries contain poisonous substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with local environmental protection regulations and on no account as domestic waste. ■

Windshield washer system

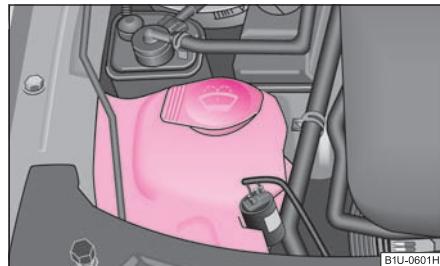


Fig. 152 Engine compartment:
Windshield washer fluid reservoir

Caution

- On no account should you add radiator antifreeze or other additives to the windscreen washer fluid.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a headlight cleaning system, you should only add cleaning products which do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights to the windscreen washer fluid. Please contact your specialist garage, who will tell you which cleaning agent you can use. ■

The windshield washer reservoir contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreens or rear window. The reservoir is located at the front right of the engine compartment

⇒ fig. 152.

The **filling level** of the container is about 3 litres and about 5,5 litres on vehicles which have a headlight washing system.

Clear water is not sufficient to intensively clean the windscreens and headlights. We therefore recommend using clean washing water together with the screen cleaner from Škoda genuine accessories (in winter additionally with antifreeze) which is capable of removing stubborn dirt. Follow the instructions for use on the packaging when using screen cleaning products.

You should always add antifreeze to the cleaning water in winter even if your vehicle is fitted with heated windscreen washer nozzles*.

It is also possible in exceptional cases to use methylated spirits when no screen cleaner with antifreeze is available. The concentration of methylated spirits must not be more than 15 %. Please note, however, that the antifreeze protection at this concentration is only adequate down to -5°C.

WARNING

Read and observe the warning notes ⇒ page 148, "Working in the engine compartment" before working in the engine compartment.

Wheels and Tyres

Wheels

General information

- New tyres do not offer optimal grip at first and should therefore be run in for about 500 km at a moderate speed and an appropriately cautious style of driving. You will also profit from longer tyre life.
- The tread depth of new tyres may differ because of design features and the configuration of the tread (depending on the type of tyre and the manufacturer).
- Drive over curbs on the side of the road and other such obstacles slowly and, where possible, at a right angle in order to avoid damage to tyres and wheel trims.
- Inspect your tyres from time to time for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges). Remove foreign bodies from the tyre profile.
- Damage to tyres and wheels is frequently not visible. Unusual vibrations or pulling of the vehicle to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. **Please reduce your speed immediately and stop if you suspect that a wheel is damaged.** Inspect the tyres for signs of damage (bulges, splits, etc.). If no visible damage is present, please drive at an appropriately slow speed and carefully to the nearest specialist garage in order to have your vehicle inspected.
- Also protect your tyres from contact with oil, grease and fuel.
- Immediately replace any dust caps of the valves which have got lost.
- Mark wheels before removing them so that their previous direction of running can be maintained when mounted them again.
- Always store wheels or tyres which been removed in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. Tyres which are not fixed to a wheel trim should be stored upright.

WARNING

- **New tyres during the first 500 km do not offer optimal grip and should therefore be run appropriately – risk of accident!**
- **Never drive with damaged tyres – risk of accident!**

Note

Please observe the various differing legal requirements regarding tyres. ■

Tyre life

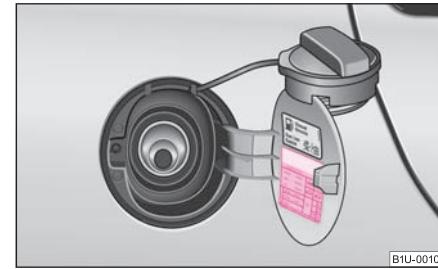


Fig. 153 An opened fuel filler flap with a tyre size and tyre inflation pressure table

The life of your tyres very much depends on the following points:

Tyre pressure

The working life of tyres will be shortened considerably if the tyres are insufficiently or over-inflated and this will have an adverse effect on the handling of your vehicle.

Correctly inflated tyres are of particular importance when travelling at **high speeds**. It is therefore good to check the pressure at least once a month and also before setting off on a long trip. Please do not forget the spare wheel* when checking the tyres.

The tyre inflation pressures for **summer tyres** are indicated on the inside of the fuel filler flap ⇒ fig. 153. The inflation pressures for **winter tyres** are 20 kPa (0.2 bar) higher than those for summer tyres ⇒ page 163.

The tyre pressure should be at the highest pressure specified for your vehicle at all times.

Always check the inflation pressure of tyres when cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres. Adapt the inflation pressure of the tyres accordingly if your vehicle is carrying a significantly higher payload.

Driving style

Fast cornering, sharp acceleration and braking (squealing tyres) increase wear-and-tear on your tyres.

Balancing wheels

The wheels of a new vehicle are balanced. There are a wide range of influences when driving which may result in an imbalance and which makes themselves felt through vibration in the steering.

You should have the wheels rebalanced since any imbalance increases wear-and-tear on the steering, the suspension and tyres. A wheel must also be rebalanced when a new tyre is fitted and each time a tyre is repaired.

Wheel alignment errors

Incorrect wheel alignment at the front and rear will not only increase wear-and-tear on the tyres but will also has an adverse effect on vehicle safety. Contact your specialist garage if you notice any unusual tyre wear.

WARNING

- If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyre must perform a greater flexing work. At higher speeds the tyre will warm up as a result of this. This can result in tread separation and even a tyre blowout.
- Immediately replace the damaged rims or tyres.

For the sake of the environment

Tyres which are insufficiently inflated increase your fuel consumption. ■

Wear indicators

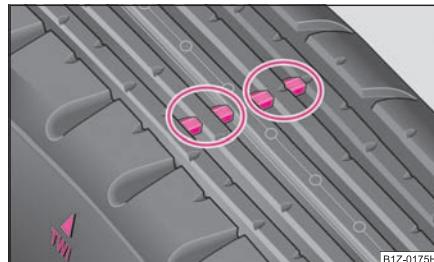


Fig. 154 Tyre tread with wear indicators

The base of the tread of the original tyres has wear indicators 1.6 mm high, installed at right angles to the direction of travel. These wear indicators are located at 6 – 8 points depending on the make and are evenly spaced around the circumference of the tyre ⇒ fig. 154. Markings on the walls of the tyres through the letters "TWI", triangular symbols or other symbols identify the position of the wear indicators.

A remaining tread of just 1.6 mm, measured in the grooves of the tread next to the wear indicators, means that your tyres have reached their legally permissible minimum tread depth.

WARNING

- You must have your tyres replaced with new ones at the latest when the wear indicators have been worn down. The legally permissible minimum tread depth should be observed.
- Worn tyres do not provide the necessary adhesion to the road surface at high speeds on wet roads. One could experience "aquaplaning" (uncontrolled movements of the vehicle – "swimming" on a wet road surface). ■

Changing wheels around

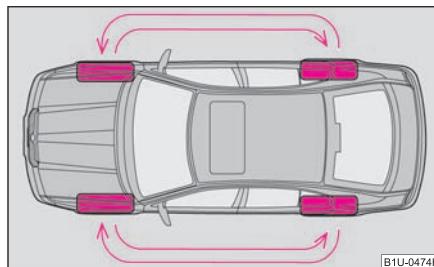


Fig. 155 Changing wheels around

If significantly greater wear is present on the front tyres, we recommend changing the front wheels around with the rear wheels as shown in the diagram ⇒ **fig. 155**. You will then obtain approximately the same life for all the tyres.

It may be advantageous to swap the tyres over "crosswise" when certain types of wear characteristic arise on the running surface of the tyres (but not in the case of unidirectional tyres). Specialist garages are familiar with details.

We recommend that you change the wheels around every 10 000 km in order to achieve even wear on all wheels and to obtain optimal tyre life. ■

New tyres and wheels

Tyres and wheel rims are important design elements. One should therefore use the tyres and wheel rims which have been released for use by Škoda Auto. They are exactly matched to the vehicle type and therefore contribute significantly to good road holding and safe driving characteristics ⇒ .

Only fit radial tyres of the same type on all 4 wheels, size (rolling circumference) and, if possible, the same tread pattern on one axle.

The specialist garages have access to the most current information about which tyres we have released for use on your vehicle.

We recommend that you have any work relating to tyres or wheels carried out by a **specialist garage**. Specialist garages have all of the necessary special tools and

replacement parts available plus the required specialist knowledge and are also in a position to properly dispose of the old tyres. A large number of specialist garages also have an attractive range of tyres and wheels available.

The tyre/wheel combinations which are approved for your vehicle are indicated in your vehicle documents. Approval and licensing may differ according to the legislation prevailing in individual countries.

Proper knowledge of the tyre data makes it easier for you to select the correct type of tyre. Tyres do, for example, have the following **inscription** on their walls:

195 / 65 R 15 91 T

What this means is:

195	Tyre width in mm
65	Height/width ratio in %
R	Code letter for the type of tyre - R radial
15	Diameter of wheel in inches
91	Load index
T	Speed symbol

The following **speed restrictions** apply to tyres.

Speed symbol	Permissible maximum speed
R	170 km/h
S	180 km/h
T	190 km/h
H	210 km/h
V	240 km/h
W	270 km/h

The **date of manufacture** is also stated on the tyre wall (possibly only on the *inside* of wheel):

DOT ... 50 08...



means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 50th week of the year 2008.

If the **spare wheel*** differs from the tyres fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres or low-profile tyres), the spare wheel* should only be used for a short time in the event of a puncture and when adopting an appropriately cautious style of driving. It should be replaced as quickly as possible by a normal wheel.

WARNING

- Only use those tyres or wheel rims which have been approved for your model of Škoda Auto vehicle. Failure to observe this instruction will adversely affect the road safety of your vehicle - risk of accident! Approval and licencing of your vehicle on public roads may also become void as a result.
- You must on no account drive at a higher speed than is permissible for your tyres - risk of an accident resulting from tyre damage and loss of control over your vehicle.
- Tyres which are 6 years old or more should only be fitted in exceptional cases and when adopting an appropriately cautious style of driving.
- Never fit tyres which have already been used without having adequate knowledge of their previous history. Tyres age even if they have not been used at all or only very little. A spare tyre must only be used in exceptional cases and only then when adopting an appropriately cautious style of driving.
- Do not, where possible, replace individual tyres but at least replace them on both wheels of a given axle at the same time. Always fit the tyres with the deeper tread depth to the front wheels.

For the sake of the environment

Old tyres must be disposed of in conformity with the appropriate regulations.

Note

It is not normally possible to fit wheels from other models of cars for technical reasons. This may also apply in certain circumstances to the wheels of the same type of vehicle. ■

Wheel bolts

Wheels and **wheel bolts** are matched to each other in terms of design. Each time you fit other wheels - e.g. light alloy wheels or wheels with winter tyres - you must therefore also use the matching wheel bolts of the correct length and shape of spherical cap. This is essential to ensure that the wheels are tightly fitted and that the brake system operates properly.

If you retrofit **wheel trims** (or have this done), please also ensure that an adequate flow of air remains assured for cooling the brake system.

The specialist garages are informed about the technical possibilities which exist regarding converting or retrofitting wheels, tyres and wheel trims.

WARNING

- In case of incorrect treatment of the wheel bolts, the wheel can loosen when the car is moving - risk of accident!
- The wheel bolts must be clean and must turn easily. However, they must never be treated with grease or oil.
- If the wheel bolts are tightened to a too low tightening torque, the rim can loosen when the car is moving - risk of accident! A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rims.

Caution

The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is 120 Nm. ■

Winter tyres

The handling of your vehicle will be significantly improved when driving on wintry roads if you fit winter tyres. Summer tyres do not offer the same grip on ice, snow and at temperatures below 7 °C because of their construction (width, rubber blend, tread pattern). This particularly applies to vehicles which are equipped with **low-profile tyres** or **high-speed tyres** (code index H or V on wall of tyre).

Winter tyres must be mounted on all four wheels to obtain the best handling characteristics.

You must only fit those types of winter tyre which are approved for your vehicle. The permissible **sizes of winter tyres** are stated in your vehicle documents. Approvals may differ because of national legislation.

Please remember that the tyres should be inflated to 20 kPa (0.2 bar) more than is the case for summer tyres ⇒ page 160, fig. 153.

Winter tyres no longer offer the same winter performance once the **tyre tread** has worn down to a depth of about 4 mm.

Ageing also causes winter tyres to lose most of their winter performance properties - even in cases where the remaining tread depth is still clearly more than 4 mm.

Speed restrictions apply to winter tyres as well as to summer tyres ⇒ page 162,
⇒ .

You can fit winter tyres of a lower speed category to your vehicle provided that you also do not drive faster than the permissible maximum speed for such tyres, even if the possible maximum speed of your vehicle is higher. The corresponding tyre category can damage the tyres when exceeding the permissible maximum speed.

Please pay attention to the notes if you decide to fit winter tyres ⇒ page 160.

You can also fit so-called "all-year tyres" instead of winter tyres.

Please contact your specialist garage if there are any points which are not clear who will be able to provide you with information regarding the maximum speed for your tyres.



WARNING

You must on no account drive your car at more than the permissible maximum speed for your winter tyres - risk of an accident resulting from tyre damage and loss of control over your car.

For the sake of the environment

Fit your summer tyres on again in good time since summer tyres offer you better grip and handling on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures below

7 °C - the braking distance is shorter, there is less tyre noise, tyre wear is reduced and fuel consumption is reduced.



Note

Please observe the various differing legal requirements regarding tyres. ■

Snow chains

Snow chains must only be mounted on the front wheels.

When driving on wintry roads, snow chains improve not only traction, but also the braking performance.

For technical reasons, it is only permissible to fit snow chains with the following wheel/tyre combinations.

Wheel size	Depth (D)	Tyre size
6J x 14	38 mm	175/80
6J x 15	38 mm	195/65
5.5J x 16	36 mm	205/55

Only use **fine-link snow chains**. They must not project more than 15 mm - including the chain lock.

Remove the **full wheel trims** if you wish to fit snow chains to the wheels.

Observe the national legal requirements relating to the maximum vehicle speed with snow chains.



WARNING

Please pay attention to the information in the supplied fitting instructions of the snow chain manufacturer.

 **Caution**

You must take the chains off as soon as you drive on roads which are free of snow. They adversely affect the handling of your vehicle, damage the tyres and are rapidly destroyed.

 **Note**

We recommend that you use snow chains from the Škoda genuine accessories. ■

Accessories, changes and replacement of parts

Accessories and replacement parts

Škoda vehicles have been built according to the latest discoveries in safety engineering. Thus one should not change the condition in which the vehicle was delivered from the manufacturer without some thought.

The following guidelines should be observed when a vehicle is to be retrofitted with accessories, have technical changes made to it or a part has to be replaced at some time in the future.

- Advise should always be obtained from a specialist garage **before** buying any accessories and **before** making any technical changes ⇒ .
- This is particularly the case when accessories are bought in a foreign country.
- Škoda Genuine Accessories which have been released for use and Škoda original parts can be bought from specialist garages that professionally undertake the assembly of parts which were purchased there.
- All Škoda original accessories which are listed in the catalogue of original accessories such as sliding/tilting roofs, spoilers, wheel rims etc. are homologized.
- Radios, aerials and other electrical accessories should only be installed by a specialist garage.
- The guidelines issued by Škoda Auto must be observed when making technical changes.
- This is to ensure that no technical damage occurs to the vehicle, that travelling and operating safety are maintained and that the changes are permissible. The specialist garages also undertake this work professionally or refer it to another specialist garage in special cases.

Any damage which is done caused by technical changes made without consulting a Škoda dealer is excluded from the guarantee.

WARNING (continued)

Škoda. Reliability, safety and suitability have been established for these Škoda original parts.

- We cannot guarantee suitability of installation into your vehicle of other products despite keeping a constant eye on market developments (also not in the case where there is an attestation or permission can be produced). ■

Technical changes

Interference on the electronic components and their software can lead to operational faults. This interference can also impair not directly affected systems because of the networking of the electronic components. This means that the operating safety of your vehicle can be considerably jeopardized, a greater wear of vehicle parts can occur and finally the vehicle registration documents expire.

We trust that you will understand that Škoda Auto cannot be liable for damage resulting from unprofessional work.

We therefore recommend that you have all work carried out with Škoda original parts at specialist garages.

WARNING

Work or modifications on your vehicle, which have been carried out unprofessionally, can cause operational faults - risk of accident! ■

Vehicles of category N1

The vehicle of category N1 is a vehicle which is designed and manufactured for transporting loads with a maximum weight of 3.5 tonnes. ■

WARNING

- We advise you, in your own interest, to only use Škoda Genuine Accessories and Škoda original parts which have been expressly approved for use on your

Breakdown assistance

Breakdown assistance

First-aid box*, Warning triangle* and bulb set*

A space for stowing the first-aid box and the bulb set is located in a well of the plastic part under the floor covering of the luggage compartment behind the spare wheel.

A space for the warning triangle is located in the luggage compartment.

Note

- Pay attention to the use-by-date of the contents of the first-aid box.
- If you equip your vehicle additionally with a warning triangle or with a first-aid box, you can purchase these from the range of Škoda Original Accessories. ■

Fire extinguisher*

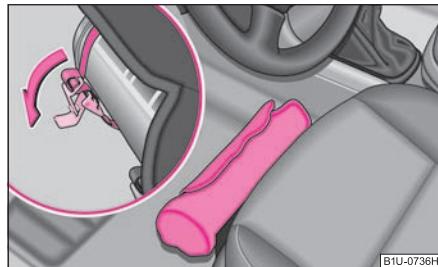


Fig. 156 Placement of fire extinguisher
B1U-0736H

The fire extinguisher is attached with straps in a holder under the driver seat.

Please read carefully the instructions which are attached to the fire extinguisher.

The fire extinguisher must be checked by an authorised person or company annually (please observe the differing legal requirements).

WARNING

If the fire extinguisher is not correctly attached, in case of sudden manoeuvres or an accident it can be "thrown" through the interior compartment and cause injuries.

Note

- The fire extinguisher must comply with the relevant and valid legal requirements.
- Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. If the fire extinguisher is used after the expiration date, its proper function is no longer assured.
- The fire extinguisher is only supplied in certain countries within the scope of delivery. ■

Vehicle tool kit

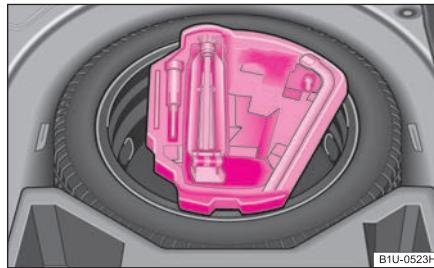


Fig. 157 Luggage compartment:
storage compartment for vehicle
tool kit
B1U-0523H

The vehicle tool kit and the lifting jack* are stowed in a box in the spare wheel* ⇒ fig. 157; there is also space here for the detachable ball head of the towing device*. The box is attached with a strap on the spare wheel*.

The vehicle tool kit contains the following parts (depending on equipment fitted):

- Wire clamps for removing the full wheel trims,
- Screwdriver,
- Plastic clip for a wheel bolt cover,
- Wheel wrench*,
- Towing eye,
- Adapter for the safety wheel bolts*.

Before placing the lifting jack* back in its storage area, screw in the arm of the lifting jack fully.

WARNING

- **The factory-supplied lifting jack* is only intended for your model of vehicle. On no account attempt to lift a heavier vehicle or other loads – risk of injury!**
- **Ensure that the vehicle tool kit is safely attached in the luggage compartment.**

Note

Ensure that the box is always secured with the strap. ■

Spray for repairing a tyre*



Fig. 158 Vehicle tool kit: Spray for repairing a tyre

B1U-0737H

The spray for repairing a tyre is intended for rapid repair of small defects in a tyre consisting of a damage up to a size of up to 5 mm. The spray is **not at all intended to replace a permanent repair on the tyre**; this repair serves to reach the workshop.

The repair can be undertaken on the vehicle immediately. Please read the attached instructions carefully before the repair.

The spray for repairing a tyre is located in the right front well of the plastic part behind the spare wheel. ■

Tyre repair kit*

The tyre repair kit is intended for the repair of minor tyre defects. The tyre repair kit contains a compressor, inflation bottle, operating instructions and accessories.

The repair with the tyre repair kit is **not at all intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre, this repair only serves to reach the next specialist garage. The repair can be undertaken on the vehicle immediately. **Please read the attached instructions carefully before the repair.**

The spray for repairing a tyre is located in the right front well of the plastic part behind the spare wheel. ■

Spare wheel*

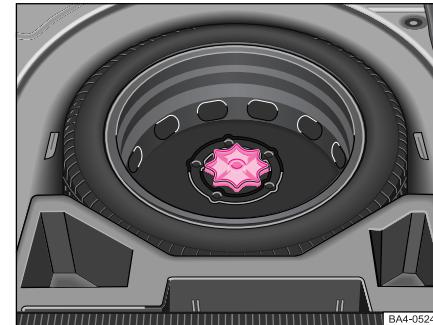


Fig. 159 Luggage compartment: Spare wheel

BA4-0924H

The spare wheel lies in a well under the floor covering of the luggage compartment and is fixed in place using special screws ⇒ page 168, fig. 159.

Before removing the spare wheel, you must take out the box with the vehicle tool kit box ⇒ page 167, fig. 157.

One should check the inflation pressure in the spare wheel (at best when generally checking the tyre air pressures - see sign on the fuel filler flap ⇒ page 160) to ensure that the spare wheel is always ready to use.

Temporary spare wheel

A warning label displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel indicates that your vehicle is equipped with a temporary spare wheel.

Please observe the following notes when driving with a temporary spare wheel:

- The warning label must not be covered after installing the wheel.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h with this spare wheel and pay particular attention while driving. Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.
- The inflation pressure for this spare wheel is identical to the inflation pressure of the standard tyres.
- Use this spare wheel only to reach the nearest specialist garage as it is not intended for continuous use. ■

Changing a wheel

Preliminary work

The following steps should be carried out before actually changing the wheel.

- If it is necessary to change a wheel, park the vehicle as far away as possible from the traffic flow. The place you choose should be **level**.
- Have **all the occupants get out**. While changing a wheel, the occupants of the vehicle should not stand on the road (e.g. behind a crash barrier).
- Apply the **handbrake** firmly.
- Shift up into the **1st gear**.

- If a trailer is coupled, uncouple it.
- Take the **vehicle tool kit** ⇒ page 167 and the **spare wheel*** ⇒ page 168 out of the luggage compartment.

WARNING

- If you find yourself in flowing traffic switch on the hazard warning lights system and place the warning triangle on the side of the road at the prescribed distance from your vehicle while observing all national legal provisions. In this way you are protecting not only yourself but also other road users.
- Never start the engine with the vehicle sitting on the raised jack - danger of suffering injury.

Caution

If you have to change a wheel on a slope first block the opposite wheel with a stone or similar object in order to secure the vehicle from unexpectedly rolling away.

Note

Comply with the national legal regulations. ■

Changing a wheel

Always change a wheel on a level surface as far as possible.

- Take off the full wheel trim* ⇒ page 170 or the caps ⇒ page 171.
- In the case of light alloy wheels remove the wheel trim cap ⇒ page 171.
- Slacken the wheel bolts ⇒ page 171.
- Jack up the vehicle until the wheel to be changed is clear of the ground ⇒ page 172.
- Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper etc.).
- Take off the wheel.
- Fit on the new spare wheel* and tighten the wheel bolts slightly.
- Lower the car.

- Tighten the wheel bolts firmly, alternately and diagonally using the wrench* (cross-wise) ⇒ page 171.
- Mount the full wheel trim/wheel trim cap or the caps.

Note

- All bolts must be clean and must turn easily.
- You must never grease or oil the wheel bolts!
- When fitting on unidirectional tyres, ensure that the tyres rotate in the correct direction ⇒ page 160. ■

Subsequent steps

After changing the wheel, you must perform the following steps.

- Stow and attach the replaced wheel in the spare wheel well.
- Stow the vehicle tool kit in the space provided.
- **Check the tyre pressure** on the spare wheel* just mounted as soon as possible.
- Have the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts **checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible. Steel and light alloy wheels must be tightened to a tightening torque of **120 Nm**.
- Have the defective tyre repaired as soon as possible.

WARNING

It is necessary to observe the guidelines given on ⇒ page 162, "New tyres and wheels" if the vehicle is subsequently fitted with tyres which are different to those it was fitted with at the works.

Note

- If you find, when changing the wheel, that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn, the bolts must be replaced before checking the tightening torque.
- Drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed to a workshop where the tightening torque can be checked. ■

Full wheel trim*

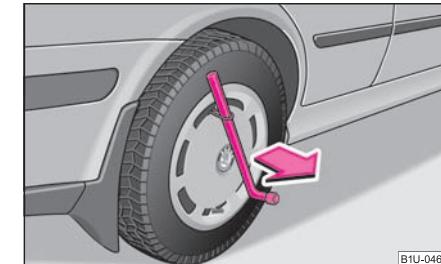


Fig. 160 Removing the full wheel trim

Pulling off

- Hook the clamp found in the vehicle tool kit into the reinforced edge of the full wheel trim.
- Push the wheel wrench* through the clamp, support the wheel wrench at the tyre and pull off the wheel trim ⇒ fig. 160.

Installing

- First press the full wheel trim onto the wheel at the valve opening provided. Then press the full wheel trim into the wheel in such a way that its entire circumference locks correctly in place.

Caution

- Use the pressure of your hand, do not knock on the full wheel trim! Heavy knocks mainly on the points where the full wheel trim has not been inserted into the wheel, can result in damage to the guide and centering elements of the full wheel trim.
- Check for yourself that the safety wheel bolt* is located in the hole in the area of the valve before fitting the full wheel trim onto a steel wheel which is attached with a safety wheel bolt* ⇒ page 172, "Securing wheels against being stolen*". ■

Wheel bolts with caps*



Fig. 161 Removing the cap.
B1Z-0138H

Pulling off

- Push the plastic clip sufficiently far onto the cap until the inner catches of the clip are positioned at the collar of the cap and detach the cap.

Installing

- Push the caps fully onto the wheel bolts.

The caps are located in the well of the luggage compartment. ■

Wheel trim caps*



Fig. 162 Pulling off wheel trim cap on light alloy wheels
B1Z-0175H

Pulling off

- Carefully remove the wheel trim cap using the wire clamp ⇒ fig. 162. ■

Slackening and tightening wheel bolts

Slacken the wheel bolts before jacking up the vehicle.

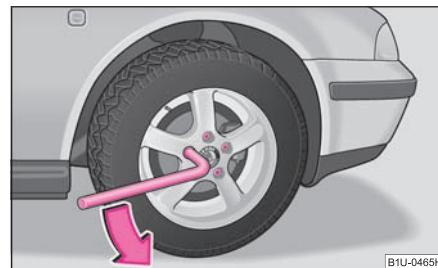


Fig. 163 Changing a wheel:
Slackening wheel bolts
B1U-046SH

Slackening wheel bolts

- Push the wheel wrench* fully onto the wheel bolt⁶⁾.
- Grasp the end of the wrench* and turn the bolt about **one** turn to the left ⇒ fig. 163.

Tightening wheel bolts

- Push the wheel wrench* fully onto the wheel bolt⁶⁾.
- Grasp the end of the wrench* and turn the bolt to the right until it is tight.

⚠ WARNING

Slacken the wheel bolts only a little (about one turn) as long as the vehicle has not yet been lifted with the lifting jack* – risk of accident!

⁶⁾ Use the appropriate adapter for slackening and tightening the safety wheel bolts ⇒ page 172.



Note

Apply pressure carefully with your **foot** to the end of the wrench* if it proves difficult to slacken the bolts. Hold tight on the vehicle when doing this and ensure that you have a steady position. ■

Raise vehicle

You have to raise the vehicle with the lifting jack* in order to be able to take off the wheel.

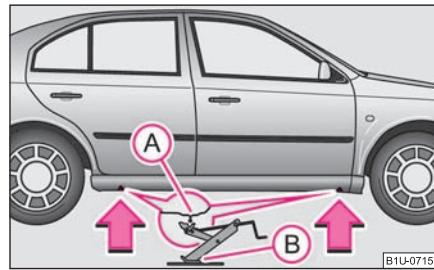


Fig. 164 Changing a wheel:
Jacking points for positioning
lifting jack

Place the jack* under the vehicle. Recesses are located at the lower sill (front and rear) ⇒ fig. 164. There is a point under the recess where the lifting jack* can be positioned, see arrows ⇒ fig. 164.

- Position the lifting jack* below the jacking point and move it up until its claw is positioned directly below the vertical web of the lower sill.
- Position the lifting jack* so that the claw grasps the web of the lower sill **(A)** and the moving base plate of the lifting jack **(B)** is resting flat against the floor.
- Turn the lifting jack* up further until the wheel is just clear of the ground.

Ground below the lifting jack which is soft and slippery can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. It is therefore always necessary to place the lifting jack* on a solid surface or use a wide and stable base. Use a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber foot mat) if the **surface is smooth**, such as cobbled stones, a tiled floor, etc.



WARNING

- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed – risk of injury!
- Take suitable measures to prevent the base of the lifting jack from slipping off – risk of injury!
- Not positioning the lifting jack* at the specified points can result in damage to the vehicle. The jack can also slip off if it does not have sufficient grip – risk of injury!
- It is important to support the vehicle with suitable supporting blocks if you wish to work under the lifted vehicle – risk of injury! ■

Securing wheels against being stolen*

You need a special adapter for slackening the safety wheel bolts.

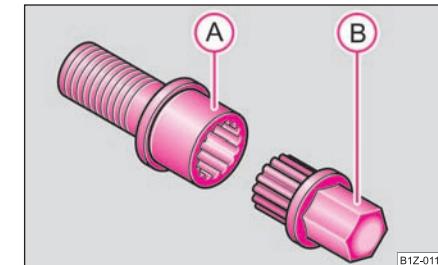


Fig. 165 Safety wheel bolt with
adapter

- Pull off the full wheel trim/cap from the wheel hub or cap from the safety wheel bolt.
- Insert the adapter **(B)** with its toothed side fully into the inner toothings of the safety wheel bolt **(A)** right down in such a way that only the outer hexagon is jutting out ⇒ fig. 165.
- Insert the wheel wrench fully onto the adapter **(B)**.
- Slacken the wheel bolt, or tighten it firmly ⇒ page 171.
- Reinstall the full wheel trim/wheel cap after removing the adapter or place the cap onto the safety wheel bolt.



- Have the **tightening torque checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible. Steel and light alloy wheels must be tightened to a tightening torque of **120 Nm**.

The safety wheel bolts on vehicles fitted with them (one safety wheel bolt per wheel) can only be loosened or tighten up by using the adapter provided.

It is meaningful to note the code number hammered into the rear side of the adapter or the rear side of the safety wheel bolts. You can obtain a replacement adapter from a specialist garage, if necessary, by quoting this number.

We recommend that you always carry the adapter for the wheel bolts with you in the vehicle. It should be stowed in the vehicle tool kit.

Caution

Damage can occur to the adapter and safety wheel bolt if the safety wheel bolt is tightened up too much.

Note

The set of safety wheel bolts can be obtained from a specialist garage. ■

Jump-starting

Initial steps

You can use the battery of another vehicle for jump-starting yours if the engine does not start because the battery on your vehicle is flat. You will require jump-start cables for this purpose.

Both batteries must have a rated voltage of 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the battery supplying the power must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged battery in your vehicle.

Jump-start cables

Only use jump-start cables which have an adequately large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps. Please pay attention to the manufacturer's instructions.

Positive cable - colour coding in the majority of cases red.

Negative cable - colour coding in the majority of cases black.

WARNING

- A discharged battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0°C. In case of frozen battery carry out no jump-starting - risk of explosion!
- Please pay attention to the warning instructions relating to working in the engine compartment ⇒ page 148.

Note

- There must not be any contact between the two vehicles otherwise current may flow as soon as the negative terminals are connected.
- The discharged battery must be properly connected to the system of the vehicle.
- Switch off any mobile phone, pay attention to the instructions for use of the mobile phone in such a situation.
- We recommend purchasing jump-start cables from Škoda Service Partners as a Škoda original accessory or from retailers who sell branded batteries. ■

Start engine

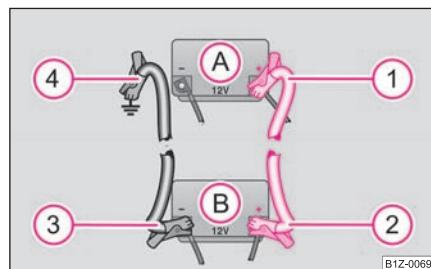


Fig. 166 Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle:
A - flat vehicle battery, B - battery providing current

It is important to connect the jump-start cables in the correct order.

Connecting positive terminals

- Attach one end **(1)** to the positive terminal ⇒ page 173, fig. 166 of the discharged battery **(A)**.
- Attach the other end **(2)** to the positive terminal of the battery supplying the power **(B)**.

Connecting negative terminal and engine block

- Attach one end **(3)** to the negative terminal of the battery supplying the power **(B)**.
- Attach the other end **(4)** to a solid metal part which is connected firmly to the engine block, or to the engine block itself.

Starting the engine

- Start the engine of the vehicle providing current and run the engine at idling speed.
- Now start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
- Interrupt the attempt at starting an engine after 10 seconds if it does not start right away and wait for about 30 seconds before repeating the attempt.
- Disconnect the cables on the engine in exactly the **reverse order** they were connected up.

WARNING (continued)

- Keep any sources of ignition (naked flame, smouldering cigarettes etc.) away from the battery – risk of an explosion! ■

Tow-starting and towing vehicle

General

Please pay attention to the following instructions if you are going to use a tow rope:

Driver of the towing vehicle

- Do not drive off until the tow rope is taught.
- Release the clutch particularly gently when starting off.

Driver of the towed vehicle

- Switch the ignition on so that the steering wheel is not blocked and you can also operate the turn signal lights, the headlight flasher, the windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system.
- Take the vehicle out of gear.
- Note that the brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running. You will require significantly greater physical force to depress the brake pedal and to steer the vehicle if the engine is not running.
- Ensure that the tow rope is always kept taught.

Tow rope or tow bar

A tow **bar** is safest way of towing a vehicle and also minimizes any shocks. You can use a tow **rope** only if a suitable tow bar is not available.

The tow rope must be elastic to protect the vehicle. Thus one should only use plastic fibre rope or a rope made out of a similarly elastic material.

Only attach the tow rope to the **towing eyes** provided for this purpose ⇒ page 175, "Front towing eye".

WARNING

- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never make contact with each other. Furthermore, the cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle – risk of a short circuit!
- Do not affix the jump starting cables to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. There is the risk of detonating gas seeping out the battery being ignited by the strong spark which results from the engine being started.
- Run the jump-start cables so that they cannot be caught by any rotating parts in the engine compartment.
- Do not bend over the batteries – risk of caustic burns!
- The vent screws of the battery cells must be tightened firmly.

Driving style

Towing another vehicle requires a certain amount of practice. Both drivers should be familiar with the particular points about towing a vehicle. Unskilled drivers should not attempt to tow in another vehicle or to be towed in.

One should be constantly vigilant not to allow impermissibly high towing forces or jerky loadings. There is always a risk of excessive stresses and damage resulting at the points to which you attach the tow rope or tow bar when you attempt to tow a vehicle which is not standing on a paved road.

Caution

If the gearbox of your vehicle no longer contains any oil because of a defect, your vehicle must only be towed in with the driven wheels raised clear of the ground, or on a special vehicle transporter or trailer.

Note

- Please comply with any national legal provisions particularly regarding the switched on signal systems, when towing in or tow-starting another vehicle.
- The tow rope must not be twisted as it may in certain circumstances result in the front towing eye being unscrewed out of your vehicle. ■

Front towing eye

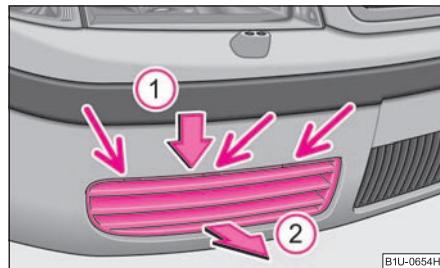


Fig. 167 Front bumper: protective grille of towing eye

The front towing eye is welded on behind the bumper on the right ⇒ fig. 167. The tow rope or the tow bar must only be attached to this eye. The grille is secured with plastic lugs at the points of the arrows. Remove the grille as follows:

- Grasp the grille on the ribs in the upper area. Press it in the direction of arrow ① and take it out in the direction of arrow ② ⇒ fig. 167.
- Install again by positioning first of all the lugs of the grille in the guides on the vehicle and press in the grille. The protective grille must engage firmly. ■

Rear towing eye



Fig. 168 Rear towing eye

The rear towing eye is located below the rear bumper on the right ⇒ fig. 168. ■

Tow-starting a vehicle

If the engine does not start, we generally do **not recommend** to tow-start your vehicle. One should attempt to start the engine using jump start cables ⇒ page 173 or call on the services of the SERVICE mobile.

If your vehicle has to be towed:

- Engage 2nd or 3rd gear with the vehicle stationary.
- Depress the clutch pedal fully and keep it depressed.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Wait until both vehicles are moving then release the clutch pedal slowly.

- Depress the clutch pedal fully when the engine fires and take the vehicle out of gear.

WARNING

There is high risk of having an accident when tow-starting a vehicle, when for example the towed vehicle runs into the towing vehicle.

Caution

Vehicles which are fitted with a catalytic converter should not be tow-started over a distance of more than 50 metres. Unburnt fuel may get into the catalytic converter and damage it. ■

Towing in a vehicle fitted with a manual gearbox

Please refer to the additional instructions ⇒ page 174.

The vehicle can be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front or rear wheels raised. The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**. ■

Fuses and light bulbs

Electric fuses

Replacing fuses

Defect fuses must be replaced.

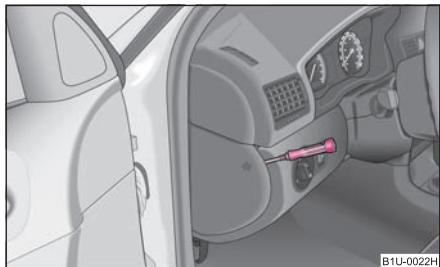


Fig. 169 Fuse cover: left side of the dash panel

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses. The fuses are located on the left side of the dash panel behind the safety cover and under the cover in the engine compartment on the left.

- Switch the ignition off and also the electrical component affected.
- Use a screwdriver to take off the fuse cover on the side of the dash panel ⇒ fig. 169 or the fuse cover in the engine compartment ⇒ page 178.
- Find out which fuse belongs to the relevant component ⇒ page 179, "Fuse assignment in the dash panel", ⇒ page 178, "Fuse assignment in engine compartment - version 1" or ⇒ page 179, "Fuse assignment in engine compartment - version 2".
- Take the plastic clip out of its fixture in the fuse cover, insert it onto the respective fuse and pull out this fuse.
- Defect fuses can be detected by their melted metal strips. Replace the defect fuse by a new fuse of the **same** ampere number.
- Fit on the fuse cover again.

We recommend that you always have the small box of replacement fuses in your vehicle. You can obtain replacement fuses from the range of Škoda original parts or from a specialist garage⁷⁾.

Colour coding of fuses

Colour	Maximum amperage
light brown	5
brown	7,5
red	10
blue	15
yellow	20
white	25
green	30

! Caution

- Never attempt to "repair" fuses and also do not replace them with a fuse of a higher amperage - risk of fire! This may also cause damage at another part of the electrical system.
- Have the electrical system checked as quickly as possible by a specialist garage if a newly inserted fuse blows again after a short time. ■

⁷⁾ The small box with replacement fuses is part of the basic equipping of the vehicle in some countries.

Fuse cover in engine compartment

The fuse box in the engine compartment exists in two different versions. You can determine which version your vehicle is fitted with after removing the fuse cover at the location of the fuses.

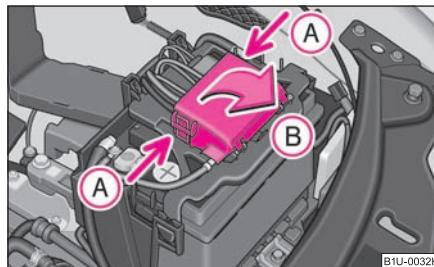


Fig. 170 Battery cover in the engine compartment
B1U-0032H

On some vehicles, the battery cover must be removed before removing the fuse cover → page 155.

Opening the cover

- Press together the interlocks of the fuse cover simultaneously in direction of arrow **A** ⇒ fig. 170 and fold down the cover in direction of arrow **B**.

Closing the cover

- Closing the cover takes place in the reverse order. ■

Fuse assignment in engine compartment - version 1

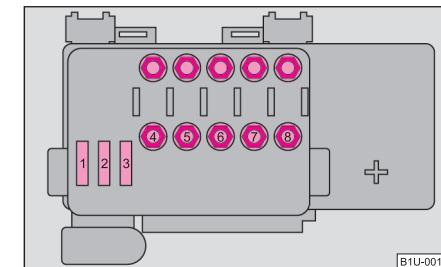


Fig. 171 Schematic representation of fuse box in engine compartment - version 1

Certain electrical components are only standard on certain vehicle model versions or only suppliable as optional equipment for certain models.

No.	Power consumer	Amperes
1	Pump for ABS	30
2	Valves for ABS	30
3	Radiator fan 1st stage	30
4	Glow plugs for heating the coolant, relay for secondary air pump	50
5	Engine control unit	50
6	Radiator fan 2nd stage	40
7	Main fuse of the interior	110
8	Dynamo	110 / 150 ^{a)}

^{a)} Depending on the engine type and equipment. ■

Fuse assignment in engine compartment - version 2

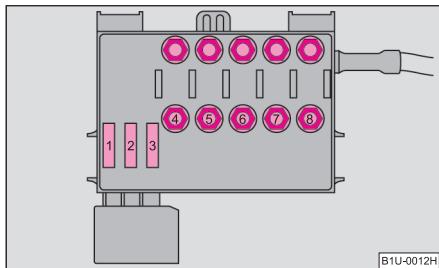


Fig. 172 Schematic representation of fuse box in engine compartment - version 2

Certain electrical components are only standard on certain vehicle model versions or only suppliable as optional equipment for certain models.

No.	Power consumer	Amperes
1	Pump for ABS	30
2	Valves for ABS	30
3	Radiator fan 1st stage	30
4	Glow plugs for heating the coolant, relay for secondary air pump	50
5	Engine control unit	50
6	Radiator fan 2nd stage	40
7	Main fuse of the interior	110
8	Dynamo	110 / 150 ^{a)}

^{a)} Depending on the engine type and equipment.

Fuse assignment in the dash panel

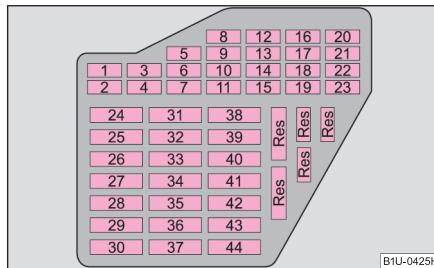


Fig. 173 Schematic representation of the fuse carrier in the dash panel

Certain electrical components are only standard on certain vehicle model versions or only suppliable as optional equipment for certain models.

No.	Power consumer	Amperes
1	Heating of the exterior mirrors, relay for cigarette lighter, power seats and washing nozzles	10
2	Turn signal lights, Xenon headlight	10
3	Lighting in storage compartment	5
4	Licence plate light	5
5	Seat heating, Climatronic, circulating air flap, exterior mirror heater, cruise control system	7,5
6	Central locking system	5
7	Reversing light, sensors for parking aid	10
8	Phone	5
9	ABS, ESP	5
10	Ignition, S-contact ^{a)}	10
11	Instrument cluster	5
12	Power supply of the self-diagnosis	7,5

No.	Power consumer	Amperes
13	Brake lights	10
14	Interior lighting, central locking system, interior lighting (without central locking system)	10
15	Instrument cluster, steering angle sender, rear mirror	5
16	Air conditioning system	10
17	Heated windscreen washer nozzles daylight driving lights	5 30
18	Right main beam	10
19	Left main beam	10
20	Right low beam, headlight range adjustment	15
21	Low beam on the left	15
22	Right parking light	5
23	Left parking light	5
24	Front window wiper, motor for wash pump	20
25	Air blower, air conditioning system, Climatronic	25
26	Rear window heater	25
27	Rear window wiper	15
28	Fuel pump	15
29	Control unit: Petrol engine control unit: Diesel engine	15 10
30	Electric sliding/tilting roof	20
31	Not assigned	
32	Petrol engine - injection valves diesel engine - injection pump, control unit	10 30
33	Headlight cleaning system	20
34	Petrol engine: Control unit diesel engine: Control unit	10 10

No.	Power consumer	Amperes
35	Trailer socket, power socket in the luggage compartment	30
36	Fog lights	15
37	Petrol engine: Control unit diesel engine: Control unit	20 5
38	Luggage compartment light, central locking system, interior lighting	15
39	Hazard warning light system	15
40	Horn	20
41	Cigarette lighter	15
42	Radio, mobile phone	15
43	Petrol engine: Control unit diesel engine: Control unit	10 10
44	Seat heaters	15

a) For power consumers, e.g. the radio, which can be operated with the ignition switched off as long as the ignition key is not withdrawn.

Electrically adjustable seats are protected by **automatic circuit breakers**, which switch on again automatically after a few seconds after the overload has been eliminated. ■

Bulbs

Changing bulbs

The relevant lamp must always be switched off before a light bulb is replaced.

Defect light bulbs should only be replaced with light bulbs of the same type. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.

Changing certain bulbs is not something which you can do yourself, but requires to be done by a specialist. Other parts of the vehicle must be removed in order to change the ►

light bulbs. This applies, in particular, to bulbs which can only be reached from the engine compartment.

We therefore recommend that you have any bulbs changed by a specialist garage or, in exceptional cases, by calling on other professional assistance.

Please note that the engine compartment is a hazardous area ⇒ page 148.

We recommend that you always have a small box of replacement bulbs in your vehicle. You can obtain replacement bulbs from Škoda original accessories or from a specialist garage⁸⁾.

A stowage place for the bulbs is located in the box in the spare wheel*.

Fitted with a xenon headlight

Change of bulbs on vehicles with Xenon lights (low beam lights, parking lights and main beam lights) should be undertaken by a specialist garage.

Bulb - Overview

Front headlight	Halogen headlight	Xenon headlight
Low beam light	H4	D2S
Main beam light	H4	H1
Parking lights	W5W	
Turn signals	PY21W	
Fog lights	H3	

Rear light unit	Bulb (Octavia)	Bulb (Combi)
Reversing light	P21W	P21W
Turn signals	PY21W	PY21W
Brake lights	P21W	P21/5W
Parking lights	P21/4W	P21/5W
Fog lights	P21/4W	P21W

Others	Bulb (Octavia)	Bulb (Combi)
Side turn signal lights	WY5W	WY5W
Licence plate light	W5W	W5W
3. Brake light	W2, 3W	LED
Interior lighting	C10W	C10W
Reading light	W5W	W5W
Luggage compartment light	C5W	C10W
Storage compartment light - front passenger side	C3W	C3W
Interior mirror light	W2, 3W	W2, 3W

⚠ WARNING

- Light bulbs H4 and H1 are pressurised and may burst when changing the bulb - risk of injury!
- It is recommended to wear gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.
- Gas discharge bulbs* (xenon bulbs) operate with a high voltage, professional knowledge is required - danger to life!

❗ Caution

Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, serviette or something similar.

ℹ Note

This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is assumed that no major complications will arise. Other light bulbs should be replaced by your specialist garage. ■

⁸⁾ The small box with replacement bulbs is part of the basic equipping of the vehicle in some countries.

Main headlight with cover

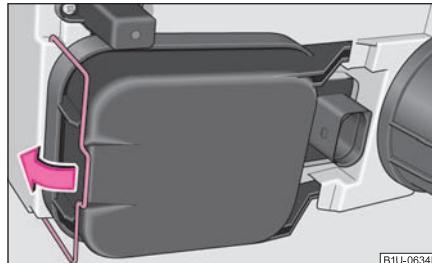


Fig. 174 Removing cover

Before changing the light bulb for the low beam and main beam light or the light bulb for the parking light, remove the protective cover from the rear part of the headlight.

Removing cover

- Switch the ignition and all lights off.
- Open the bonnet.
- Press off the circlip from the cover and fold it in the direction of arrow ⇒ fig. 174.
- Remove the cover of the headlight by pulling towards the middle of the vehicle.

Installation takes place in the reverse order. ■

Parking light at the front

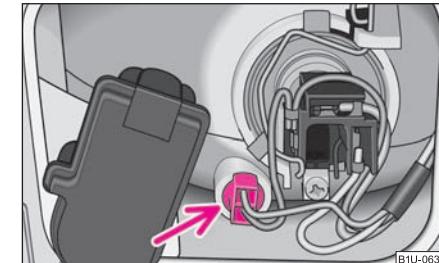


Fig. 175 Change the light bulb for the parking light

Change the light bulb for the parking light

- Switch the ignition and all lights off.
- Open the bonnet.
- Remove the cover of the headlight.
- Pull the lamp holder with light bulb for the parking light out of the headlight ⇒ fig. 175.
- Take the faulty bulb out of the fixture and insert a new one.
- Insert the lamp holder with new light bulb into of the headlight.
- Insert the cover of the headlight. ■

Main beam light and low beam light

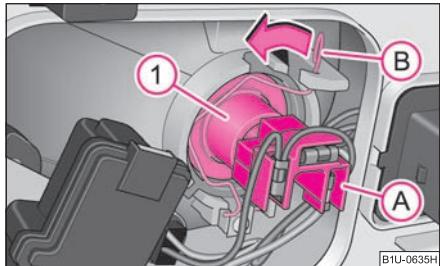


Fig. 176 Change light bulbs for main beam lights and low beam lights

Change light bulb for main beam light and low beam light

- Switch the ignition and all lights off.
- Open the bonnet.
- Remove the cover of the headlight.
- Hold the sprung wire clamp **B** and disconnect the plug **A**.
- Unhook the sprung wire clamp **B** by pressing in direction of the light bulb and fold it in direction of arrow.
- Remove the light bulb **1** and insert the new light bulb in such a way that the fixing lugs of the light bulb socket fit into the recesses at the reflector.
- Fold the sprung wire clamp over the lamp holder and press it until it locks into the holder.
- Plug in plug.
- Insert the cover of the headlight.

Note

Get the headlight setting checked by a specialist garage after replacing the light bulb. ■

Fog lights*

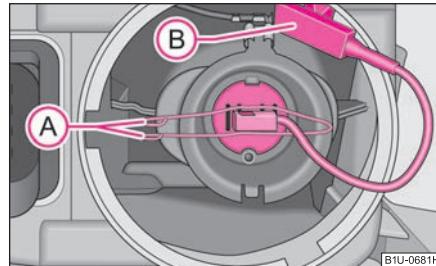


Fig. 177 Change light bulbs for fog lights

Change light bulbs for fog lights

- Switch the ignition and all lights off.
- Open the bonnet.
- Turn the plastic cover of the headlight towards the middle of the vehicle and remove it.
- Disconnect the plug connector **B**.
- Unhook the sprung wire clamp **A** out of the slots of the lamp housing and fold it down.
- Remove the halogen lamp with cable. Insert the new halogen lamp in such a way that the fixing lugs on the reflector lie in the corresponding recesses in the light socket.
- Close the sprung wire clamp over the light socket. Press together the sprung wire clamp and lock together again.
- Plug in plug.
- Insert the plastic cover.

Note

Get the headlight setting checked by a specialist garage after replacing the light bulb. ■

Turn signal light at the front

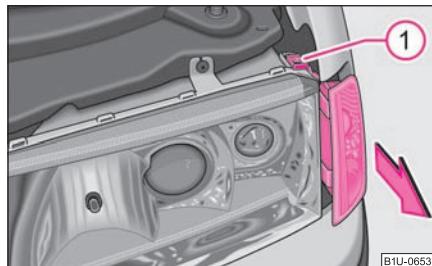


Fig. 178 Removing the light bulb for the turn signal light

Changing light bulb for turn signal light (at the front)

- Switch the ignition and all lights off.
- Open the bonnet.
- Unscrew the screw (1).
- Push the lamp out in direction of arrow ⇒ fig. 178.
- Turn the holder with the light bulb to the left and pull it out.
- Press the defective light bulb into the socket, turn to the left and remove.
- Press a new light bulb into the socket and turn the light bulb to the right as far as the stop.
- Insert the holder with the light bulb into the housing of the turn signal light and turn it to the right up to the stop.
- Push the housing of the turn signal light back in such a way that the guide lugs lock into the circlips of the main headlight.
- Screw in the screw (1). ■

Light unit (Octavia)

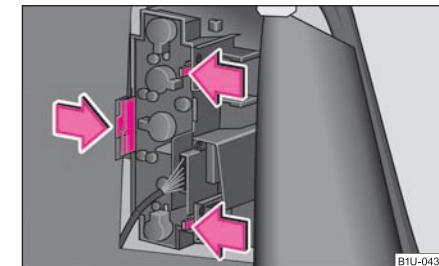


Fig. 179 Luggage compartment: Light bulb holder

Changing light bulbs in the lamp holder

- Switch the ignition and all lights off.
- Open the boot lid.
- Raise the floor covering.
- Press off the catches in the direction of arrow ⇒ fig. 179 and take out the lamp holder.
- Press the defective light bulb into the socket, turn to the left and remove.
- Insert the new light bulb and turn it to the right up to the stop.
- Insert the light bulb holder again, the flexible tongues must lock in place.
- Push the cover back into place. ■

Rear light unit (Combi)



Fig. 180 Luggage compartment:
Light bulb holder

Licence plate light

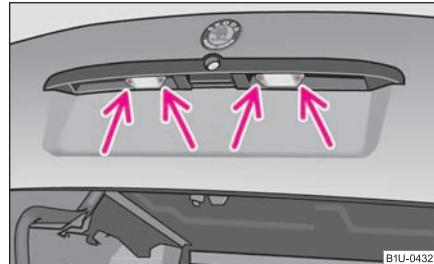


Fig. 181 Licence plate light:
Replacing light bulb

Changing light bulbs in the lamp holder

- Switch the ignition and all lights off.
- Open the boot lid.
- Open the relevant storage compartment in the luggage compartment.
- Press off the flexible tongue in direction of arrow **⇒ fig. 180** and remove the lamp holder.
- Press the defective light bulb into the socket, turn to the left and remove.
- Insert the new light bulb and turn it to the right up to the stop.
- Insert the light bulb holder again, the plastic tongue must lock in place. ■

Changing light bulbs of licence plate light

- Switch the ignition and all lights off.
- Open the boot lid and unscrew the light glass.
- Take the defective bulb out of the holder and insert a new one.
- Insert the glass cover of the light again and press it down to the stop - ensure that the sealing rubber is correctly seated.
- Screw on the light glass slightly. ■

Technical Data

Technical Data

General information

The details given in the official vehicle registration documents always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual. Please refer to the official vehicle registration documents or consult a specialist garage concerning the engine with which your vehicle is equipped. ■

Used abbreviations

Abbreviation	Importance
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for the engine output
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
CO ₂ in g/km	discharged quantity of carbon dioxide in grams per driven kilometer
M5	5-speed manual gearbox
PD	Unit injector engine

Performances

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system. ■

Weight

The loading capacity is reduced in line with the range of the special equipment. The unladen weight contains a fuel tank topped up to 90%. A driver with a weight of 75 kg is also included in the value. ■

Identification details



Fig. 182 Vehicle data sticker

Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker ⇒ fig. 182 is located on the floor of the luggage compartment and is also stated in the Service schedule.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data:

- ① Vehicle identification number (VIN)
- ② Vehicle type

- ③ Gearbox code, paint number, interior equipment number, engine output, engine code
- ④ Partial description of the vehicle

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped into the engine compartment on the right hand shock absorber dome. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code).

Engine number

The engine number is stamped into the engine block.

Type plate (production plate)

The type plate is located in the engine compartment at the front on the left hand shock absorber dome.

Homologation sign

The homologation sign is located on the lock carrier. Vehicles for certain countries do not have an homologation sign.

Sticker on inside of fuel filler flap

The sticker is affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap. They contain the following data:

- the prescribed type of fuel;
- tyre size;
- Tyre pressure. ■

Fuel consumption according to the ECE standards and EU guidelines

Depending on the range of the special equipment, style of driving, traffic situation, weather influences and vehicle condition, the consumption values which in practice result when using the vehicle can deviate from the indicated values.

Urban traffic

The consumption measurement in urban traffic begins with starting of the cold engine. Afterwards the normal urban traffic is simulated.

Non-urban traffic

For the consumption measurement in non-urban traffic the vehicle, as in daily motoring, is accelerated and braked several times in all gears. The vehicle speed changes within the range from 0 to 120 km/h.

Combined traffic

The consumption value in the combined traffic consists of 37% from the value for the urban traffic and of 63% from the value for the non-urban traffic. ■

Dimensions

Dimensions (mm)

	OCTAVIA	COMBI
Length	4507	4513
Width	1731	1731
Width including exterior mirror	1984	1984
Height	1431/1455 ^{a)}	1457/1481 ^{a)}
Wheel base	2512	2512
Track gauge front / rear	1513/1494	1513/1494
Clearance	134	134

^{a)} The value corresponds to the status with rough road package.

1.4 ltr./55 kW - EU4

Engine

Power output	kW per rpm	55/5000
Maximum torque	Nm per rpm	126/3800
Number of cylinders		4
Displacement	cm ³	1389

Performances

		OCTAVIA - M5	COMBI - M5
Maximum speed	km/h	171	171
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h	s	15,3	15,5

Fuel consumption (in ltr./100 km) and CO₂ emission (in g/km)

	OCTAVIA - M5	COMBI - M5
Urban consumption	9,1	9,1
Non-urban consumption	5,4	5,4
Consumption - combination	6,8	6,8
CO ₂ emission - combination	163	163



Capacities (in liter)

Fuel tank capacity/of which spare	55/7
Reservoir for windscreen washer system/with headlight cleaning system	3/5,5
Engine oil a)	3,2
Cooling system of the vehicle	5,5

a) Oil capacity with oil filter change. Inspect oil level according to filling - see Owner's Manual.

Weight (in kg)

	OCTAVIA - M5	COMBI - M5
Permissible gross weight	1750	1770
Unloaded weight ready for work	1230	1245
Loading capacity	520	525
Loading capacity when using the TLC	470	475
Permissible front axle load	1000	1000
Permissible rear axle load	990	1000
Permissible trailer loads, trailer braked	850 ^{a)} /850 ^{b)}	850 ^{a)} /850 ^{b)}
Permissible trailer loads, trailer unbraked	500	500

a) For uphills up to 12%.

b) Only country specific up to 8% uphill.

1.6 ltr./75 kW - EU4/EU2 DDK

Engine

Power output	kW per rpm	75/5600
Maximum torque	Nm per rpm	148/3800
Number of cylinders		4
Displacement	cm ³	1595

Performances

		OCTAVIA - M5	COMBI - M5
Maximum speed	km/h	190	190
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h	s	11,8	11,9

Fuel consumption (in ltr./100 km) and CO₂ emission (in g/km)

	OCTAVIA - M5	COMBI - M5
Urban consumption	9,9	9,9
Non-urban consumption	5,5	5,5
Consumption - combination	7,1	7,1
CO ₂ emission - combination	169	169



Capacities (in liter)

Fuel tank capacity/of which spare	55/7
Reservoir for windscreen washer system/with headlight cleaning system	3/5,5
Engine oil a)	4,5
Cooling system of the vehicle	7,0

a) Oil capacity with oil filter change. Inspect oil level according to filling - see Owner's Manual.

Weight (in kg)

	OCTAVIA - M5	COMBI - M5
Permissible gross weight	1790	1805
Unloaded weight ready for work	1260	1275
Loading capacity	530	530
Loading capacity when using the TLC	470	470
Permissible front axle load	1000	1000
Permissible rear axle load	990	1000
Permissible trailer loads, trailer braked	1200 ^{a)/1400^{b)}}	1200 ^{a)/1400^{b)}}
Permissible trailer loads, trailer unbraked	500	500

a) For uphills up to 12%.

b) Only country specific up to 8% uphill.

1.8 ltr./110 kW - EU4/EU3D**Engine**

Power output	kW per rpm	110/5700
Maximum torque	Nm per rpm	210/1750-4600
Number of cylinders		4
Displacement	cm ³	1781

Performances

		OCTAVIA - M5	COMBI - M5
Maximum speed	km/h	219	219
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h	s	8,4	8,5

Fuel consumption (in ltr./100 km) and CO₂ emission (in g/km)

	OCTAVIA - M5		COMBI - M5	
	EU4	EU3D	EU4	EU3D
Urban consumption	10,7	10,9	10,7	10,9
Non-urban consumption	6,2	6,2	6,2	6,3
Consumption - combination	7,9	7,9	7,9	8,0
CO ₂ emission - combination	189	190	189	192



Capacities (in liter)

Fuel tank capacity/of which spare	55/7
Reservoir for windscreen washer system/with headlight cleaning system	3/5,5
Engine oil a)	4,5
Cooling system of the vehicle	6,8

a) Oil capacity with oil filter change. Inspect oil level according to filling - see Owner's Manual.

Weight (in kg)

	OCTAVIA - M5	COMBI - M5
Permissible gross weight	1845	1865
Unloaded weight ready for work	1315	1330
Loading capacity	530	535
Loading capacity when using the TLC	470	475
Permissible front axle load	1000	1000
Permissible rear axle load	990	1000
Permissible trailer loads, trailer braked	1300 ^{a)} /1500 ^{b)}	1300 ^{a)} /1500 ^{b)}
Permissible trailer loads, trailer unbraked	500	500

a) For uphills up to 12%.

b) Only country specific up to 8% uphill.

1.9 ltr./74 kW TDI PD - EU4

Engine

Power output	kW per rpm	74/4000
Maximum torque	Nm per rpm	240/1800
Number of cylinders		4
Displacement	cm ³	1896

Performances

		OCTAVIA - M5	COMBI - M5
Maximum speed	km/h	189	189
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h	s	11,8	11,9

Fuel consumption (in ltr./100 km) and CO₂ emission (in g/km)

	OCTAVIA - M5	COMBI - M5
Urban consumption	6,5	6,5
Non-urban consumption	4,3	4,3
Consumption - combination	5,1	5,1
CO ₂ emission - combination	135	135



Capacities (in liter)

Fuel tank capacity/of which spare	55/7
Reservoir for windscreen washer system/with headlight cleaning system	3/5,5
Engine oil a)	4,3
Cooling system of the vehicle	6,8

a) Oil capacity with oil filter change. Inspect oil level according to filling - see Owner's Manual.

Weight (in kg)

	OCTAVIA - M5	COMBI - M5
Permissible gross weight	1855	1875
Unloaded weight ready for work	1325	1340
Loading capacity	530	535
Loading capacity when using the TLC	470	475
Permissible front axle load	1000	1000
Permissible rear axle load	990	1000
Permissible trailer loads, trailer braked	1300 ^{a)/1500^{b)}}	1300 ^{a)/1500^{b)}}
Permissible trailer loads, trailer unbraked	500	500

a) For uphills up to 12%.

b) Only country specific up to 8% uphill.

Octavia - Vehicles of the group N1

Engine	1.4 ltr./55 kW - EU4	1.6 ltr./75 kW - EU4	1.8 ltr./110 kW - EU4	1.9 ltr./74 kW TDI PD - EU4
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)	15,5	11,9	8,5	11,9
Permissible gross weight	1690	1720	1775	1785
Unladen weight ready for work	1230	1260	1315	1325
Loading capacity	460	460	460	460
Loading capacity when using the TLC	410	400	400	400

Octavia Combi - Vehicles of the group N1

Engine	1.4 ltr./55 kW - EU4	1.6 ltr./75 kW - EU4	1.8 ltr./110 kW - EU4	1.9 ltr./74 kW TDI PD - EU4
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)	15,5	11,9	8,5	11,9
Permissible gross weight	1705	1735	1790	1800
Unladen weight ready for work	1245	1275	1330	1340
Loading capacity	460	460	460	460
Loading capacity when using the TLC	410	400	400	400

Index

A

Abroad	133
ABS	126
Warning light	30
Accessories	166
Adjusting seats	56, 98
electrically	57
Adjusting the steering wheel	87
Air conditioning system	79
Recirculated air mode	82
Airbag	108
Deployment	108
Front airbag	109
Side airbag	111
Warning light	28
Airbag system	108
Warning light	28
Airbags	108
Alarm	40
Alternator	
Warning light	31
Antilock brake system	126
Antilock brake system (ABS)	
Warning light	30
Anti-theft alarm system	40
Ashtray	72
Auto Check Control	23
Auto Computer	19
Automatic seat adjustment	58

Automatic vehicle wash systems	137
Automatic wiper/washer system	52
Avoiding damage to your vehicle	133

B

Battery	31, 155
change	158
Charge	158
Inspecting the electrolyte level	157
Operation in winter	157
Before setting off	97
Belt	
Warning light	32
Belt tensioners	107
Belts	102
Bonnet	14, 147
Boot lid	38
Brake	
Handbrake	90
Warning light	31
Brake Assist	127
Brake booster	126
Brake fluid	154
Brake pads	
Warning light	29
Brakes	125
Bulbs	
Warning light	27
Button for the central locking system	37

Buttons on the driver's door	
Power windows	41

C

Car state	23
Catalytic converter	129
Central locking system	35
lock	37
unlock	37
Changing a wheel	169
Changing bulbs	180
Changing the engine oil	151
Changing wheels around	162
Charging the battery	158
Warning light	31
Check engine oil level	150
Child safety	115
Side airbag	117
Child safety lock	35
Child safety seat	
on the front passenger seat	116
Safety information	115
Child seat	118
Classification into groups	118
ISOFIX system	121
Use of child safety seats	118
Children and safety	115
Chrome parts	139
Cigarette lighter	73

Cleaning	137
Climatronic	
Defrosting windows	84
Recirculated air mode	85
Setting temperature	85
Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)	82
Clock	19
Clothes hooks	76
Cockpit	
General view	9
Compartments	74
Computer	19
Convenience operation	43
Converting/masking over headlights	133
Coolant	152
replenishing	153
Warning light	28
Coolant level	
Warning light	28
Coolant quantity	
Warning light	28
Coolant temperature gauge	16
Coolant temperature/coolant level	
Warning light	28
Correct seated position	98
Counter for distance driven	17
Cruise control system	92
Cup holder	
front	71

D

Deactivating	
an airbag	113
Deactivating an airbag	113
Defrosting rear window	51
De-icing the windows	139
Detachable towing device	136
Diesel	144
Diesel engines	
Starting the engine	89
Digital clock	19
Direction indicators	49
Warning light	26
Display	22
Displays	16
Distance driven	17
Door	
Child safety lock	35
Driving economically	129

E

EDL	124
Electric sliding/tilting roof	44
Electrically adjustable exterior mirror	54
Electronic Differential Lock	124
Electronic immobiliser	27, 34
Warning light	27
Electronic stability programme	123
Electronic stability programme (ESP)	
Warning light	31

Emergency wheel	168
Engine	
starting	88
switching off	89
Engine compartment	
Safety information	148
Engine electronics	
Warning light	27
Engine oil	149
Changing	151
changing	151
check	150
replenishing	151
Warning light	29
Engine revolutions counter	16
Environment	129
Environmental compatibility	129, 132
ESP	123
Warning light	31
Exhaust gas	
Warning light	27
Exhaust gas inspection	
Warning light	27
Explanations	6
Exterior mirror	54
Exterior mirror heater	54

F

First-aid box	167
Fixing net	
Combi	65
Octavia	64

Fog lights	47
Warning light	27
Front airbag	109
Front armrest	75
Fuel	144
Diesel fuel	144
Fuel gauge	17
Petrol	144
Fuel consumption	129
Saving energy	129
Fuel gauge	17
Fuel reserve	
Warning light	29
Full wheel trim	170
Fuses	177

C

Gearbox	
mechanical	90
General view	
Cockpit	9
Glass roof	44
Glow plug system	89
Warning light	27

H

Handbrake	90
Hazard warning light system	48
Warning light	26
Head restraint	59
Headlamp range adjustment	48

Headlight flasher	49
Headlights	
Fog lights	47
Heated windscreen washer nozzles	52
Heating	77
Air outlet vents	77
Defrosting windows	78
Recirculated air mode	79
Horn	9

I

Ignition	87
Ignition lock	87
Immobiliser	34
Information display	22
Instrument cluster	16
Instrument lighting	47
Interior light	
Luggage compartment	51

Interior lighting	
front	50
rear	50
Interior mirror	54
Intermittent wiping	52
ISOFIX	121
ISOFIX system	121

J	
Jacking points	172
Jump-starting	173

K

Key	33
-----------	----

L

Lashing eyes	64
Leather care	142
Lifting jack	167, 172
Light	
Changing bulbs	180
Lighting of the interior of the vehicle	50
rear	50

Lights

converting/masking over	133
Range adjustment	48
switching on and off	46
Warning lights	25

Liquid in reservoir for windshield washer system	
Warning light	29

Loading	63
---------------	----

Lock

Central locking system	37
------------------------------	----

lock

Central locking system	37
------------------------------	----

Locking	34, 35
---------------	--------

Remote control	39
----------------------	----

Locking and unlocking from inside	37
---	----

Low beam	46
----------------	----

Warning light	26
---------------------	----

Luggage	38
---------------	----

Luggage compartment	38, 63
---------------------------	--------

Lashing eyes	64
--------------------	----

Luggage compartment door	
Lighting	51
Luggage rack	70

M

Main beam	46, 49
Warning light	26
Manual gearbox	90
Manual shifting of gears	90
Memory for the on-board computer	19
Mobile phone	94
Motoring abroad	133
Multi-functional indicator	19

N

Note holder	71
-------------	----

O

Oil	149
Warning light	29
Oil dipstick	150
Onboard computer	19
Open door	
Warning light	30
Opening a single door	35
Operation in winter	
Battery	157
Biodiesel	145
De-icing windows	139
Outside temperature	20

Overview of the engine compartment	149
------------------------------------	-----

P

Paint	139
Paint damage	139
Parking	91
Parking aid	
rear	91
Parking light	49
Parking the vehicle	91
Passive Safety	97
Pedals	62
Petrol	144
Petrol engines	
Starting the engine	89
Polishing	139
Power windows	41
Button in the front passenger door and in the rear doors	42
Buttons on the driver's door	41
Operational faults	43
with central locking system	43

R

Radiator fan	154
Rear armrest	76
Rear fog light	47
Warning light	27
Rear window	
heater	51
Rear window heater	51

Rear-view mirror	
------------------	--

Exterior mirror	54
Interior mirror	54
Recharge battery	158
Refuelling	145
Remote control	
Synchronisation process	40
Replacing fuses	177
Replacing the wiper blades	53
Roof aerial	137
Running in the car	128

S

Safe securing	36
Safety	97
Safety information	
Engine compartment	148
Safety wheel bolts	172
Saving electrical energy	129
Seat belt height adjuster	105
Seat belt warning light	104
Seat belts	102, 106
Belt tensioners	107
Cleaning	143
fastening	104
Height adjustment	105
Safety information	103
taking off	106
Warning light	32
Seat heaters	62
Seats	56
Service Display	18

Service Interval Display	18
Setting temperature	
Heating	77
Setting the clock	19
Shifting	90
Side airbag	111
Side lights	46
Snow chains	164
Spare wheel	168
Speedometer	17
Stability system	123
Starting the engine	88
after fuel tank has run empty	89
Diesel engines	89
Petrol engines	89
Storage compartment	
Lighting	50
Storage compartments	74
Storage facilities	74
Sun	51
Switching lights on and off	46
Switching off the engine	89

T

Taking care of your vehicle	137
TCS	125
Warning light	31
Telephone	94
Temperature	
outside	20
the first 1 500 kilometres	128

The roof luggage rack system	70
Thickness of brake pads	
Warning light	29
Tilting roof	44
Tool	167
Towing a trailer	134
Towing device	136
towing vehicle	174
Tow-starting	174
Traction control system	125
Traction control system (TCS)	
Warning light	31
Trailer	134
General Maintenance	134
Transporting children	115
Tread depth	161
Turn signal lights	49
Warning light	26
Two-way radio systems	94
Tyre	160
Tyres	
Winter tyres	163

U

Underbody protection	141
Unlocking	35
Remote control	39

V

Vanity mirror	51
Vehicle tool kit	167

Visors	51
--------------	----

W

Warning lights	25
Warning symbols	25
Warning triangle	167
Washing	137
with a high-pressure cleaner	138
Washing the vehicle	137
Washing vehicle by hand	138
Wax treatment	139

Wheel

Changing	169
Spare	168

Wheel bolts	163
-------------------	-----

Wheel trim	160, 170
------------------	----------

Wheels	160
--------------	-----

Windows	41
de-icing	139

Windscreen washer nozzles	52
---------------------------------	----

Windshield washer fluid reservoir	159
Warning light	29

Windshield washer system	159
Warning light	29

Windshield wiper	52
------------------------	----

Winter tyres	163
--------------------	-----

Wiper blades	
Replacing the wiper blades	53

X

Xenon headlights	180
------------------------	-----

Škoda Auto pursues a policy of constant product and model development. We trust that you will understand that changes to models in terms of shape, equipment and engineering, may be introduced at any time. The information about scope of delivery, appearance, performances, dimensions, weight, fuel consumption, standards and functions of the vehicle is only correct at the time of publication. Certain items of equipment might only be installed later on (information given by the local authorised Škoda Service Partner) and only envisaged for particular markets. It is therefore not possible for legal claims to be made based on the data, illustrations and descriptions contained in this Owner's Manual.

Reprinting, reproduction or translation, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of Škoda Auto.

Škoda Auto expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

We reserve the right to make changes to this document.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2010



ŠkodaService
ŠkodaGenuine Parts
ŠkodaGenuine Accessories

How you can contribute to a cleaner environment

The fuel consumption of your Škoda - and thus the level of pollutants contained in the exhaust - is also determined by how you drive.

The noise level and wear and tear are also influenced by how you personally handle your vehicle. This Owner's Manual tells you how to drive your Škoda to achieve the minimum impact on the environment, and how to save money at the same time. Look up „Environment” in the Index to find out more.

Please also refer to all the texts identified with a  in this Owner's Manual.

Make your contribution - for the sake of the environment.

www.skoda-auto.com

Návod k obsluze
Octavia Tour anglicky 05.10
S63.5610.35.20
1U0 012 003 MH